



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

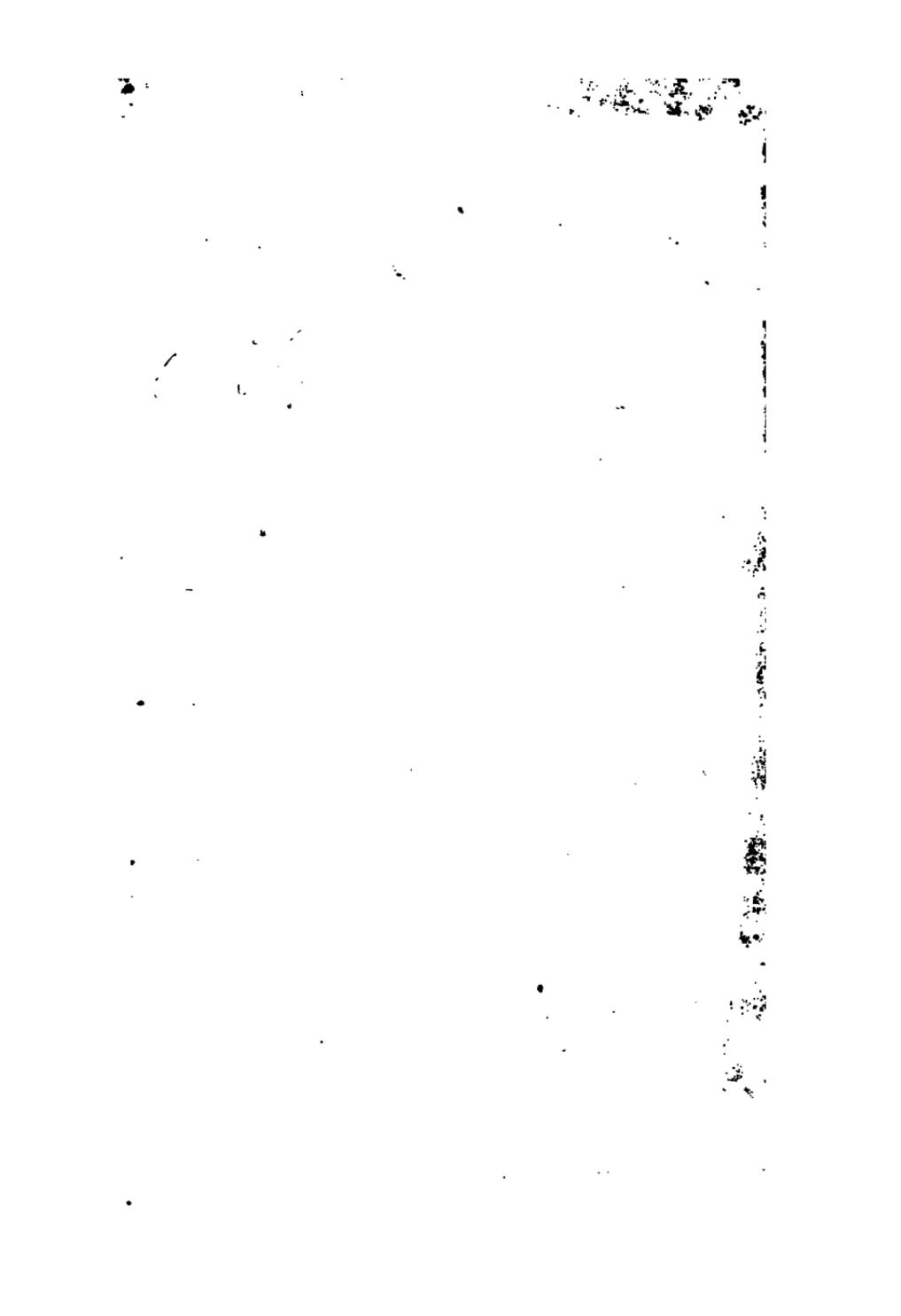
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

3058
8.94

~~E. Jack~~
C. Tidway
Sep 16. 1823

3058 f. 97



ETON LATIN GRAMMAR,

OR

AN INTRODUCTION

TO

THE LATIN TONGUE;

WITH

EXPLANATORY NOTES, COLLECTED FROM VARIOUS GRAMMARIANS

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

ELEVENTH EDITION.

IN TENUI LABOR.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LACKINGTON, HUGHES, HARDING, MAVOR, AND LEPARD
BALDWIN AND CO.; G. AND W. B. WHITTAKER; LONGMAN AND CO.
SCATCHARD AND CO.; J. RICHARDSON; T. BOOSEY AND SONS; J. ROBIN
SON; SIMPKIN AND MARSHALL; OGLE AND CO.; T. HAMILTON AND
WILLIAMS.

1822.

USEFUL KNOWLEDGE.

Lately Published, very neatly printed, Price Ninepence each, New Editions, greatly improved, of

DR. MAVOR'S CATECHISMS:

OR,

FIRST PRINCIPLES OF KNOWLEDGE AND INSTRUCTION FOR YOUNG CHILDREN OF EITHER SEX.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES.

The Mother's Nursery Catechism—Catechism of English Grammar with Exercises in false Syntax and Orthography.—Catechism of Health, with Maxims for the Management, &c. of Children.—General Knowledge, a Brief Introduction to the Arts and Sciences.—History of England, to the present Day.—History of Scotland, Ireland, and Wales, to their respective Union with England. History of France to the Restoration of Louis XVIII.—History of Rome.—History of Greece.—Universal History.—Catechism of Geography, or Knowledge of the Globe and its Inhabitants.—Animated Nature, a History of Animals.—Botany, a Description of Plants, Flowers, &c.—Biography of the most eminent Britons.—Catechisms of the Laws and Constitution of England; and Catechism of the Bible, or Sacred Truths.

*** To the PUBLIC.—Since the first appearance of Dr. MAVOR's series of CATECHISMS on useful and important subjects, there have been several imitations of the general plan, and direct plagiarisms of the titles. His publishers consider this a compliment to a well-known and long-experienced writer for the instruction of Youth, rather than what was probably intended—an insidious attempt to foist off, under this disguise, works, which, in some cases, are neither sound in principles, nor correct in point of facts.

They refrain, however, from enlarging on this subject; and only respectfully request, that PARENTS and TEACHERS will give that preference which they may feel to be due to the sanctions of a real name; or, at least, that they will examine and compare, before they decide.

NEW and IMPROVED EDITIONS are constantly in the Press; and a continuation of the original series, comprising other popular subjects, will be brought forward as occasion requires.

LONDON: printed for the Proprietors of MAVOR'S ETON LATIN GRAMMAR, and sold by all other Booksellers throughout the United Kingdom.



Printed by A. APPLEGATH,
Duke-street, Stamford-street.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE Editor of the following work, after using the ETON **LATIN GRAMMAR** in his school for upwards of twenty years, and consequently becoming intimately acquainted with its merits and defects, conceived the idea of compiling and publishing an **APPENDIX**, consisting of explanatory *Notes* and other useful *Additions* to that valuable and popular **INTRODUCTION**. A large impression, however, of the **APPENDIX** having been sold off, and its credit being sufficiently established to warrant a second, it struck the compiler, that he might have it in his power to confer a still more acceptable service on masters and pupils, if he published a **CORRECT EDITION** of the **ORIGINAL**, and threw his former little work into the form of *Notes*, so as to meet the eye of the young scholar in connection with the text.

In accomplishing this object, he has been studious to unite brevity with utility—neither to perplex the student with unnecessary explanations, nor to omit what experience taught him was essential to be known. And in order to remove every objection to the use of this edition, he begs leave to observe, that he does not recommend the *Notes* to be committed to the memory, but only to be read over once a month; so that the pupil may be able to refer to them with promptness and facility, whenever occasion requires. Youth, indeed, have already enough to learn by heart; and their entrance on Latin, which generally takes place at a very early age, cannot be rendered too easy and smooth, in order to encourage their further progress. A boy, however, who has made himself completely master of the common

Eton Grammar, when he comes to construing and parsing, will find himself ignorant of many particulars, which it does not enable him to explain ; and his master must either take upon himself the trouble of supplying deficiencies by oral instruction, or leave his pupil to pick up what he wants, from larger and more elaborate works on the subject, which perhaps are not within his reach, even if he were qualified to understand them. Hence the utility of this plan appears so obvious, that it would be offering an insult to the understanding of teachers to recommend it by argument.

The Editor has therefore only to add, that the utmost pains have been taken to exhibit the text of the Eton Latin Grammar, in its greatest purity—an object of no small importance, when it is considered how many incorrect editions are obtruded on the public ; and that his publishers by means of a clear type, and a superior paper, have rendered the work as pleasing to the eye as could be expected in a publication of this nature, where the expense, of necessity, was to be kept within moderate bounds, from the competition it has to encounter with *cheap* but *inaccurate* impressions of the same *ORIGINAL*.

The sale of **TEN** very large impressions, within a few years, of the **ETON** Latin Grammar, with Notes, for the Use of Schools, is the best evidence of the continued patronage of the public, and the estimation in which the work is held. It is probable that the Eton Greek Grammar may soon appear in a similar form, which has long been wanted. In offering a new and revised edition of the present Work, the Editor has thought proper to add a brief account of the Roman Calendar, with Rules for turning Roman into English time, which he hopes will be found useful to youth ; to whose instruction he early devoted his labours, and for whose welfare and proficiency in sound learning his best wishes shall be breathed while

W. MAVOR.

Rectory, Woodstock, August 1, 1822.

THE
ETON LATIN GRAMMAR.*

THE Latin Letters are thus written :

Capitals.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Small, or Common.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Of these Letters, six are named Vowels, *a, e, i, o, u, y.*
The rest are called Consonants.

A vowel makes a full and perfect sound of itself, as *e.*
A consonant cannot sound without a vowel, as *be.*
Consonants are divided into mutes, liquids, and double
letters.

The liquids are *l, m, n, r;* the double letters are *j, x, z.*
The remaining letters are called mutes. *K, Y, Z,* are
found only in words originally Greek.

* GRAMMAR teaches us to speak, or write, any language properly and
correctly.

Grammar consists of four parts, *Orthography, Etymology, Syntax,*
and *Prosody.*

ORTHOGRAPHY treats of letters, with the proper division of words and
sentences. It is the art of spelling.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the several kinds of words or parts of speech, with
their accidents and formations.

SYNTAX teaches the construction of words into sentences, according to
their several relations to each other; and consists of two parts, *Concord*
and *Government.*

PROSODY instructs us in the quantity of syllables, and their arrangement
in versification.

A syllable is a distinct sound of one or more letters pronounced in a breath.

A diphthong is the sound of two vowels in one syllable. Of diphthongs there are five in number, *au*, *eu*, *ei*, *æ*, *oe*. These two last are commonly pronounced as the vowel *e*, and are often joined and written thus: *æ*, *œ*.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH are Eight:

1. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; declined.
2. Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection; undeclined.

OF A NOUN.

A NOUN is the name of whatsoever Thing, or Being, we see, or discourse of.

Nouns are of two kinds, substantives and adjectives. A noun substantive declares its own meaning, and requires not another word to be joined with it, to show its signification; and has commonly *a*, *an*, or *the*, before it: as *homo*, a man; *angelus*, an angel; *liber*, the book.

A noun adjective always requires to be joined with a substantive, of which it shows the nature, or quality: as *bonus puer*, a good boy; *malus puer*, a naughty boy.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have two numbers; the singular and the plural.

The singular speaketh but of one; as *puter*, a father.

The plural speaketh of more than one; as *patres*, fathers.

CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have six cases in each number:

The nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative.

The nominative case cometh before the verb, and answereth to the question *who?* or *what?* as *who teaches?* *magister docet*, the master teaches.

The

The genitive case is known by the sign *of*,* and answereth to the question *whose?* or *whereof?* as, *whose learning? doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master, or, the master's learning.

The dative case is known by the signs *to* or *for*, and answereth to the question *to whom?* or *to or for what?* as, *to whom do I give the book? do librum magistro*, I give the book *to* the master.

The accusative case followeth the verb, and answereth to the question *whom?* or *what?* as, *whom do you love? amo magistrum*, I love the master.

The vocative case is known by calling or speaking to; as, *ō magister*, o master.

The ablative case is known by prepositions, expressed or understood, serving to the ablative case; as *de magistro*, of the master; *coram magistro*, before the master.

Also, the prepositions *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*; and the word *than*, after the comparative degree; are signs of the ablative case.

GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

GENDERS of nouns are three: the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

ARTICLES are used in Grammar to denote the gender of nouns, and are thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
		Masc	Fœm.
Nominative	<i>Hic, hæc, hoc,</i>	Nom.	<i>Hi, hæ, hæc,</i>
Genitive	<i>Hujus,</i>	Gen.	<i>Horum, harum, horum,</i>
Dative	<i>Huic,</i>	Dat.	<i>His,</i>
Accusative	<i>Hunc, hanc, hoc,</i>	Acc.	<i>Hos, has, hæc,</i>
Vocative	—	Voc.	—
Ablative	<i>Hoc, hac, hoc.</i>	Abl.	<i>His.</i>

Nouns declined with two articles are called common,

* The Genitive Case in *English* is frequently expressed by the Letter *s*, with an Apostrophe, in this manner '*s*; as *my father's son*, that is, *the son of my father*.

that is, are of the masculine and feminine gender: as, *hic* and *hæc parens*, a parent, father or mother.

Nouns are called doubtful, when declined with the article *hic* or *hæc*; as *hic* or *hæc anguis*, a snake.

Some nouns are also called epicene: that is, when under one article both sexes are signified; as, *hic passer*, a sparrow; *hæc aquila*, an eagle; both male and female.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

There are FIVE declensions of substantives, distinguished by the ending of the genitive case.*

THE first declension † makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *æ*; as,

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hæc</i>	Mus- <i>a</i> , a song,	N. <i>hæ</i>	Mus- <i>æ</i> , songs,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Mus- <i>æ</i> , of a song,	G. <i>harum</i>	Mus- <i>ärum</i> , of songs,
D. <i>huic</i>	Mus- <i>æ</i> , to a song,	D. <i>his</i>	Mus- <i>is</i> , to songs,
A. <i>hanc</i>	Mus- <i>am</i> , a song,	A. <i>has</i>	Mus- <i>as</i> , songs,
V. <i>ō</i>	Mus- <i>a</i> , o song,	V. <i>ō</i>	Mus- <i>æ</i> , o songs,
A. <i>ab hæc</i>	Mus- <i>ā</i> , from a song.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Mus- <i>is</i> , from songs.

THE

* Most cases in the singular number, and all in the plural, are formed from the genitive case singular.

† 1. Seven nouns in the first declension make *abus* rather than *is* in the dative and ablative plural: *anima*, *dea*, *equa*, *filia*, *liberta*, *mulia*, *nata*; to distinguish them from the masculines *animus*, *deus*, &c.

2. The genitive of this declension anciently ended in *as*, which *familia* still retains, when joined to *pater* and *mater*; as *pater familiæ*, *patris familiæ*, &c.

3. Three terminations from the Greek belong to this declension; *as*, *es*, *e*, and are thus declined:

N. <i>hic Aeneas</i> ,	N. <i>hic Anchises</i> ,	N. <i>hæc Epitome</i> ,
G. <i>Aeneæ</i> ,	G. <i>Anchisæ</i> ,	G. <i>Epitomes</i> ,
D. <i>Aeneæ</i> ,	D. <i>Anchisæ</i> ,	D. <i>Epitome</i> ,
A. <i>Aeneam</i> , v. -an,	A. <i>Anchisen</i> ,	A. <i>Epitomen</i> ,
V. <i>Aenea</i> ,	V. <i>Anchise</i> ,	V. <i>Epitome</i> ,
Ab. <i>Aeneā</i> .	Ab. <i>Anchise</i> , v. A. Ab.	Ab. <i>Epitomes</i> .

Nouns in *stes* make *sta* in the vocative; as *Thyestes*, *Thyesta*.

4. To this declension belong patronymics in *des*, as *Peïdes*; with these proper

THE second declension* makes the genitive case singular to end in *i*; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic</i> Magistr-er, <i>a</i> master,	N. <i>hi</i> Magistr-i, masters,
G. <i>hujus</i> Magistr-i, <i>of a</i> master,	G. <i>hor</i> Magistr-ōrum, <i>of</i> masters,
D. <i>hūic</i> Magistr-o, <i>to a</i> master,	D. <i>his</i> Magistr-is, <i>to</i> masters,
A. <i>hunc</i> Magistr-um, <i>a</i> master,	A. <i>hos</i> Magistr-os, masters,
V. <i>ō</i> Magistr-er, <i>o</i> master,	V. <i>ō</i> Magistr-i, <i>o</i> masters,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> Magistr-o, <i>by a</i> master.	A. <i>ab his</i> Magistr-is, <i>by</i> masters.

Obs. i. The nominative and vocative cases of nouns are for the most part alike, in both numbers: And when the nominative case singular of the second declension ends in *us*, the vocative ends in *e*; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic</i> Domin-us, <i>a</i> lord,	N. <i>hi</i> Domin-i, lords,
G. <i>hujus</i> Domin-i, <i>of a</i> lord,	G. <i>horum</i> Domin-ōrum, <i>of</i> lords,
D. <i>hūic</i> Domin-o, <i>to a</i> lord,	D. <i>his</i> Domin-is, <i>to</i> lords,
A. <i>hunc</i> Domin-um, <i>a</i> lord,	A. <i>hos</i> Domin-os, lords,
V. <i>ō</i> Domin-e, <i>o</i> lord,	V. <i>ō</i> Domin-i, <i>o</i> lords,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> Domin-o, <i>by a</i> lord.	A. <i>ab his</i> Domin-is, <i>by</i> lords.

Obs. ii. *Deus*, God, maketh *ō* *Deus* in the vocative

proper names, *Acastes*, *Achātes*, *Agyrtes*, *Autiphates*, *Bootes*, *Butes*, *Laētes*, *Leuctres*, *Menætes*, *Philoctētes*, *Polites*, *Procrustes*, *Thersites*, *Thyestes*, *Zetes*: also names of jewels and wines: as *achātes*, *aromatics*. Other nouns in *es* are of the third.

1. Nouns of the second, ending in *er*, lose *e* in declining; as *liber*, *a book*, *libri*; except eight, *adulter*, *gener*, *puer*, *presbyter*, *socer*, *Mulciber*, *Liber*, the god Bacchus, and *liberi*, children.

2. *Deus* in the plural is thus declined; *hi dei*, *v. dii*; *deorum*, *v. deūm*; *deis*, *v. diis*; *deos*: *dei*, *v. dii*; *deis*, *v. diis*.

3. The poets sometimes use *us* instead of *e* in the vocative; as *fluvius*, *fluius*, *Patricius*, &c. This is after the Attic manner.

4. Greek nouns in *os* and *on* sometimes preserve their original form, instead of taking *us* and *um*; as *Delos*, *Ilion*; and have *o* instead of *i* in the genitive; as *Androgeos*, *G. Androgeo*, *v. Androgei*, *D. Androgeo*, *A. Androgeon*, *v. um*, &c. *Athos*, *G. D. Ab. Atho*, *A. Atho*, *v. Athon*.

5. Nouns from the Greek, ending in the diphthong *eus*, are of the second and third declension; as *hic Orpheus*; *G. ei*, *v. eos*; *D. eo*, *v. et*; *A. eum*, *v. ea*; *V. eu*; *Ab. eo*.

6. Proper names in *es* of the third take sometimes the same form: as *Achilles*, *v. Achilleus*; *G. Achillis*, *v. Achillei*, *v. Achilleos*.

case singular : *Also*, the proper name of a man ending in *ius* makes *i* ; as *Georgius*, George, Voc. *Georgi*. In like manner, *filius*, a son, maketh *fili*, and *genius*, a genius, *geni*.

Obs. III. Nouns of the neuter gender are generally of the second and third declension ; and make the nominative, the accusative, and the vocative cases alike, in both numbers ; and in the plural number these cases end all in *a* ; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>hoc Regn-um</i> , a kingdom,	N. <i>hæc Regn-a</i> , kingdoms,
G. <i>hujus Regn-i</i> , of a kingdom,	G. <i>hor. Regn-órum</i> , of kingdoms,
D. <i>huius Regn-o</i> , to a kingdom,	D. <i>his Regn-is</i> , to kingdoms,
A. <i>hoc Regn-um</i> , a kingdom,	A. <i>hæc Regn-a</i> , kingdoms,
V. <i>o Regn-um</i> , o kingdom,	V. <i>o Regn-a</i> , o kingdoms,
A. <i>ab hoc Regn-o</i> , from a kingdom,	A. <i>ab his Regn-is</i> , from kingdoms.

THE third declension* makes the genitive case singular to end in *is* ; as,

Singular

* GENERAL RULES.

1. Neuters of the third in *e*, *al*, *ar*, make *i* in the ablative singular, *ia* in the nominative plural, and *ium* in the genitive : as *rete*, *animal*, *calcar*.
2. But *far*, *par*, *jubar*, *nectar*, *hepar*, with towns in *e*, as *Præneste*, are regular in the ablative.
3. Nouns ending in *es* or *is*, not increasing in the genitive, make *tum* ; as *nubes*, *vallis* : except these six, *vates*, *canis*, *juvenis*, *panis*, *volucris*, and the plural *noua*, *apes*.
4. Monosyllables of the third ending in *as*, and in *s* or *x* after a consonant, make *tum* in the genitive plural ; as *mas*, *mons*, *merx*.

IRREGULARS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

5. In the ACCUSATIVE and ABLATIVE. The names of rivers, cities, and gods ending in *is*, take *im*, and sometimes *in*, in the accusative, and *i* in the ablative ; as *Tíbris*, *Bætis*, *Bilbili*, *Serápis*. Note—*Bætis* makes also *Bæte*, *Tigris*, *Tigre*, in the ablative.

6. Eleven common nouns also make *im* in the accusative, and *i* in the ablative ; *Buris*, *vis*, *sindápis*, *cucumis*, *amíssis*, *ravis*, *sitis*, *tussis*, *mephitis*, *gunmis*, and *cánnabis*, which also makes *cánnabe* in the ablative.

7. Nine take *im* or *em* in the accusative, and *i* or *e* in the ablative : *aqállis*, *clavis*, *lens*, *pelvis*, *febris*, *puplis*, *sementis*, *turris*, *navis*.

8. These four also, *restis*, *cutis*, *secúris*, *strigilis*, have two accusatives, but in the ablative make *reste*, *cute*, *secúri*, *strigili*.

9. In the ABLATIVE. The names of months, though regular in the accusative, make *i* only in the ablative ; *Aprilis*, *April-i*; *Octóber*, *Octóber-i*.

tr. *Singular.*

N. *haec* Nub-es, *a cloud*,
 G. *hujus* Nub-is, *of a cloud*,
 D. *huius* Nub-i, *to a cloud*,
 A. *hanc* Nub-em, *a cloud*,
 V. *o* Nub-es, *o cloud*,
 A. *ab haec* Nub-e, *from a cloud*.

Plural.

N. <i>hae</i>	Nub-es, <i>clouds</i> ,
G. <i>harum</i>	Nub-iūm, <i>of clouds</i> ,
D. <i>his</i>	Nub-ibus, <i>to clouds</i> ,
A. <i>has</i>	Nub-es, <i>clouds</i> ,
V. <i>o</i>	Nub-es, <i>o clouds</i> .
A. <i>ab his</i>	Nub-ibus, <i>from clouds</i> .

Many

10. Nouns formed of adjectives of two endings make only *i*; as *bi-pennis*, *molāris*, *candīlis*; Except from this rule, *rudis*, *juvenis*, making *e*; and *familiāris*, *natālis*, *rivalis*, *sodālis*, *volucris*, making *e* or *i*, but generally *i*.

11. The following nouns make *e* or *i* indifferently; *finis*, *occiput*, *rus*, *sepelles*, *tridens*, *pugil*, *vigil*; and towns signifying AT a place, as *Carthagine*, or *Carthagini*: These *e* or *i*, but rather *e*; *annis*, *anguis*, *avis*, *civis*, *classis*, *fustis*, *ignis*, *imber*, *orbis*, *postis*, *sors*, *unguis*; and a few others, by poetic licence.

12. In the GENITIVE PLURAL. To nouns making *ium* in the genitive plural, add words of more than one syllable in *us*; *cliens*, *infans*, *adolēscens*; but substantives as well as adjectives and participles frequently admit of a syncope; as *adolescentum*, *infantum*, *cadentum*, &c. and *parens* properly makes *parentum*.

13. These nouns, *caro*, *cohors*, *cor*, *cos*, *dos*, *faux*, *glis*, *lar*, *linter*, *lis*, *mus*, *nix*, *nox*, *os* *os*, *Quiris*, *Samnis*, *uter*, *venter*, and *vis*, make *ium* in the genitive plural; add the compounds of *as*, as *sextans*.

14. *Bos* makes *boum*, and in the dative and ablative *bobus* and *bubus*. *Alex*, and the plural noun *cælitæ*, make *um* and *uem*.

15. GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD, increasing impure, that is, in *is* after a consonant, are sometimes thus declined.

Sing.

N. <i>Arcas</i> ,	N. <i>Arcades</i> ,
G. <i>Arcadis</i> , v. <i>ados</i> ,	G. <i>Arcadum</i> ,
D. <i>Arcadi</i> ,	D. <i>Arcadibus</i> ,
A. <i>Arcadem</i> , v. <i>ada</i> ,	A. <i>Arcades</i> , v. <i>adas</i> ,
V. <i>Arcas</i> ,	V. <i>Arcades</i> ,
Ab. <i>Arcade</i> .	Ab. <i>Arcadibus</i> .

Plur.

Add *Mines*, *Tres*, *heros*, though increasing pure, i. e. in *is* after a vowel; so *tempas*, *aspis*, *delphin*, and many more. But *Pan* makes *Panos*, *Ac. Pana*, seldom *Panis* and *Panem*. *Aer*, *æther*, and several other nouns, make the accusative most generally in *a*.

16. Greek names of men in *is* are thus formed: *hic Daphnis*; G. *idix*, v. *idos*; *idi*; *im*, v. *in*, sometimes *idem*; *i*; *ide*.

17. Greek names of women are thus formed: *haec Phillis*; —*idis*, v. *idos*; —*idi*; —*ida*, v. *idem*, never *in* or *in*; —*i*; *ide*: so *chlamys*. But some names of cities make *im*; as *Aulis*, *Elis*, Ac. *ida*, *idem*, v. *im*.

18. Greek nouns, in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, if they

Many nouns of this declension increase in the genitive case ; as in the following examples :

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic Lapid-is</i> , a stone,	N. <i>hi Lapid-es</i> , stones,
G. <i>hujus Lapid-is</i> , of a stone,	G. <i>horum Lapid-um</i> , of stones,
D. <i>huius Lapid-i</i> , to a stone,	D. <i>his Lapid-ibus</i> , to stones,
A. <i>hunc Lapid-em</i> , a stone,	A. <i>hos Lapid-es</i> , stones,
V. <i>ō Lapid-is</i> , o stone,	V. <i>ō Lapid-es</i> , o stones,
A. <i>ab hoc Lapid-e</i> , with a stone.	A. <i>ab his Lapid-ibus</i> , with stones.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hoc Op-us</i> , a work,	N. <i>hæc Oper-a</i> , works,
G. <i>hujus Oper-is</i> , of a work,	G. <i>horum Oper-um</i> , of works,
D. <i>huius Oper-i</i> , to a work,	D. <i>his Oper-ibus</i> , to works,
A. <i>hoc Op-us</i> , a work,	A. <i>hæc Oper-a</i> , works,
V. <i>ō Op-us</i> , o work,	V. <i>ō Oper-a</i> , o works,
A. <i>ab hoc Oper-e</i> , from a work.	A. <i>ab his Oper-ibus</i> , from works.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic Pa-rens</i> , a parent,	N. <i>hi Parent-es</i> , parents,
et <i>hæc Pa-rens</i> , a parent,	et <i>hæ Parent-es</i> , parents,
G. <i>hujus Parent-is</i> , of a parent,	G. <i>hor Parent-um</i> , of parents,
D. <i>huius Parent-i</i> , to a parent,	D. <i>his Parent-ibus</i> , to parents,
A. <i>hunc Parent-em</i> , a parent,	A. <i>hos Parent-es</i> , parents,
et <i>hanc Parent-em</i> , a parent,	et <i>has Parent-es</i> , parents,
V. <i>ō Pa-rens</i> , o parent,	V. <i>ō Parent-es</i> , o parents,
A. <i>ab hoc Parent-e</i> , by a parent.	A. <i>ab his Parent-ibus</i> , by parents.

do not increase in the genitive, or, if they increase pure, *i. e.* in *os* after a vowel, take this form : Sing. N. *hæc hæresis*; G. *is*, v. *ios*, v. *eos*; D. *i*; A. *im*, v. *in*; V. *i*; Ab. *i*. Sing. N. *hæc chelys*; G. *ios*; D. *yi*; A. *ym*, v. *yn*; V. *y*; Ab. *ye*, v. *y*. So are declined the names of cities in *polis* : as *Penthpolis*; also *Atys*, *basis*, *cidaris*, *crisis*, *Cotys*, *metamorphosis*, *podus*, *syntaxis*, *synthesis*, and others.

19. Greek nouns always throw away *s* in the vocative ; as *Chreme*, *Achille*, *Palla*, the proper names of men.

20. Greek nouns make *um* in the genitive plural, except those in *os* making *ios* or *eos* in the genitive singular, which take *isum*, sometimes *eon* ; as *diacepsion*, *metamorphoseon*.

21. Greek nouns in *ma*, as *arōma*, *epigramma*, oftener take *tis* than *tibus* in the dative and ablative plural.

THE fourth declension* makes the genitive case singular to end in *us*; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic</i> Grad-us, <i>a step</i> ,	N. <i>hi</i> Grad-us, <i>steps</i> ,
G. <i>hujus</i> Grad-ús, <i>of a step</i> ,	G. <i>horum</i> Grad-uum, <i>of steps</i> ,
D. <i>huc</i> Grad-ui, <i>to a step</i> ,	D. <i>his</i> Grad-ibus, <i>to steps</i> ,
A. <i>hunc</i> Grad-um, <i>a step</i> ,	A. <i>hos</i> Grad-us, <i>steps</i> ,
V. <i>ō</i> Grad-us, <i>o step</i> ,	V. <i>ō</i> Grad-us, <i>o steps</i> ,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> Grad-u, <i>with a step</i> .	A. <i>ab his</i> Grad-ibus, <i>with steps</i> .

THE fifth declension† makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *ei*; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>haec</i> Faci-es, <i>a face</i> ,	N. <i>hae</i> Faci-es, <i>faces</i> ,
G. <i>hujus</i> Faci-éi, <i>of a face</i> ,	G. <i>harum</i> Faci-érum, <i>of faces</i> ,
D. <i>huc</i> Faci-éi, <i>to a face</i> ,	D. <i>his</i> Faci-ébus, <i>to faces</i> ,
A. <i>hanc</i> Faci-em, <i>a face</i> ,	A. <i>has</i> Faci-es, <i>faces</i> ,
V. <i>ō</i> Faci-es, <i>o face</i> ,	V. <i>ō</i> Faci-es, <i>o faces</i> ,
A. <i>ab haec</i> Faci-e, <i>from a face</i> .	A. <i>ab his</i> Faci-ébus, <i>from faces</i> .

* 1. To the fourth declension belong nouns ending in *u*, indeclinable in the singular, as *cornu*, *genu*, *veru*. The plurals are thus formed: N. *cornua*, G. *cornuum*, D. *cornibus*, A. *cornua*, V. *cornua*, Ab. *cornibus*.

2. Eight nouns make *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural; *acus*, *arcus*, *artus*, *locus*, *partus*, *querlus*, *specus*, *tribus*; three *ihus* and *ubus*; *partus*, *genu*, *veru*.

3. GREEK NOUNS in *o* are thus declined: *haec Manto*; G. *ae*; D. *o*; A. *o*; V. *o*; Ab. *o*. So *Echo*, *Erato*, *Suppho*, and many more. *Dido* takes also the Latin form; as *Dido*, G. *Didonis*, v. *Didis*; *Juno* belongs to the third declension, and has only *Junonis*.

4. The sacred name *JESUS* is thus declined: G. *JESU*, D. *JESU*, A. *JE-SUM*, V. *JESU*, Ab. *JESU*.

† 1. All nouns of this declension want the plural, except *res* and *dies*, which are entire; and *species*, *spes*, *fucis*, *effigies*, which have only the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

2. Some other nouns of the fifth may probably have plural cases, though they are not commonly found in any good authors now extant. *Facies* is declined with all the cases, to show the long increase of the genitive.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

A NOUN adjective* is declined with three termina-

* GENERAL RULES.

1. Adjectives are of three declensions.
2. The first declension hath three terminations ; as *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum* ; and is like the first and second declensions of substantives.
3. The second hath two terminations ; as *hic et hæc tristis*, *hoc triste* ; and is wholly of the third declension of substantives.
4. The third hath only one termination ; as *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc felix* ; and is also like the third declension of substantives.
5. The second declension of adjectives makes the ablative singular in *i* only ; the third in *e* or *i* ; and both make the neuter plural in *ia* ; and the genitive in *ium* ; except comparatives and a few others.

FIRST DECLENSION.

6. Adjectives in *er* of the first declension lose *e* in declining ; as *ater*, *atra*, *atrum* ; except *tener*, *alter*, *asper*, *exter*, *gibber*, *lacer*, *liber*, *miser*, *prosper*, and *Iber* increasing long. And the compounds of *fero* and *gero* ; as *opifer*, *laniger*. *Dexter* makes *dextera*, or *dextra*, but rather *dextra*.
7. *Cæter* is not read in the masculine singular, but in all other cases is entire.

SECOND AND THIRD DECLENSION.

8. Eleven adjectives have three endings in the nominative and vocative, but are like *tristis*, in the rest : *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *volucr*, *salaber*, *campdster*, *pedester*, *equdster*, *paliuster*, *sylvdster* ; as *hic acer*, v. *acris*, *hæc acris*, *hoc acre*.

9. Several adjectives declined like *felix* make *e* only in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural ; *calebs*, *compos*, *dives*, *hosper*, *impos*, *impibes*, *pauper*, *pubes*, *sospes*, *superstes* ; also compounds of *color*, *corpus*, and *pes* ; as *concolor*, *tricorpor*, *tripes*.

10. *Par* and *memor* have only *i* in the ablative ; but *compar*, *impars*, *dispar*, make *e* or *i*.

11. COMPARATIVES and *vetus*, make *a*, not *ia*, in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter.

12. Adjectives making *i*, or *e* and *i*, in the ablative, make *um* in the genitive plural ; except *celer*, *consors*, *compar*, *dispar*, *impars*, *inops*, *memor*, *supplex*, *vetus*, *vigil*, *uber*. Add COMPARATIVES, and compounds from *capi*, *facio*, *caput*, *genus* ; as *præceps*, *artifex*, *particeps*, *degener*. *Locus* makes *um* and *ium*.

13. Adjectives ending in *er*, *or*, *es*, *os*, have no neuter plural ; as *puber*, *memor*, *dives*, *compos*. Also *pubis*, *impibis*, *supplex*, *comis*, *inops*, *vigil*, *sone*, *insone*, *redux*, *intercus*, and a few others ; except *hebes*, *teres*, and adjectives in *er* of three endings ; as *peddster*.

14. *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, and feminine and neuter in the plural.

15. *Plus* is thus declined : N. *hoc plus*, G. *pluris*, D. *caret*, A. *plus*, V. *plus*, Ab. *plure*. Plur. N. *hi et hæc plures*, *hæc plura*, G. *plurium*, D. *pluribus*, A. *plures et plura*, Ab. *pluribus*. *Pluria* is sometimes used in the neuter plural for *plura*, and *plurum* for *plurien*.

tions,

tions, as *bonus*, good; *tener*, tender: or with three articles, as in the following examples:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bon-us, bon-a, bon-um,			N. Bon-i, bon-æ, bon-a,		
G. Bon-i, bon-æ, bon-i,			G. Bon-órum, bon-árum, bon-		
D. Bon-o, bon-æ, bon-o,			D. Bon-is, [órum,		
A. Bon-um, bon-am, bon-um,			A. Bon-os, bon-as, bon-a,		
V. Bon-e, bon-a, bon-um,			V. Bon-i, bon-æ, bon-a,		
A. Bon-o, bon-å, bon-o.			A. Bon-is.		

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ten-er, tene-ra, tene-rum,			N. Tene-ri, tene-ræ, tene-ra,		
G. Tene-ri, tene-ræ, tene-ri,			G. Tene-rórum, tene-rárum,		
D. Tene-ro, tene-ræ, tene-ro,			D. Tene-ris, [tene-rórum,		
A. Tene-rum, -ram, -rum,			A. Tene-ros, tene-ras, tene-ra,		
V. Ten-er, tene-ra, tene-rum,			V. Tene-ri, tene-ræ, tene-ra,		
A. Tene-ro, tene-rå, tene-ro.			A. Tene-ris.		

Obs. *The masculine and neuter genders of adjectives are declined like nouns substantive of the second declension; and the feminine gender, like nouns of the first declension.*

Unus, one; *solus*, alone; *totus*, the whole; *nullus*, none; *alter*, the other; *uter*, whether of the two; and other adjectives, make the genitive case singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*; as,

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Un-us, un-a, un-um,			N. Un-i, un-æ, un-a,		
G. Un-ius,			G. Un-órum, un-árum, un-6-		
D. Un-i,			D. Un-is, [rum,		
A. Un-um, un-am, un-um,			A. Un-os, un-as, un-a,		
V. Un-e, un-a, un-um,			V. Un-i, un-æ, un-a,		
A. Un-o, un-å, un-o.			A. Un-is.		

Note. *Unus* has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular number; as *unæ litteræ*, a letter; *una mænia*, a wall.

In like manner is declined *alius*, another; which makes *aliud* in the neuter gender singular number.

A NOUN adjective of three articles is declined after the third declension of substantives; as *tristis*, sad; *melior*, better; *felix*, happy.

Singular.

N. <i>hic</i>	Trist-is,	hoc trist-e,	N. <i>hi</i>	Trist-es,	<i>hæc</i> trist-ia,
et <i>hæc</i> .			et <i>hæ</i>		
G. <i>hujus</i>	Trist-is,		G. <i>hor.</i>	Trist-iūm,	
D. <i>hūic</i>	Trist-i,		har. <i>hor.</i>		
A. <i>hunc</i>	Trist-em,	hoc trist-e,	D. <i>his</i>	Trist-ibus,	
et <i>hanc</i>			A. <i>hos</i>	Trist-es,	<i>hæc</i> trist-ia,
V. <i>ō</i>	Trist-is,	et trist-e,	et <i>has</i>		
A. <i>ab hoc</i> ,	Trist-i,		V. <i>ō</i>	Trist-es,	et trist-ia,
<i>hæc, hoc,</i>			A. <i>ab his</i>	Trist-ibus.	

Singular.

N. <i>hic</i>	Meli-or,	hoc meli-us,	N. <i>hi</i>	Meli-ores,	<i>hæc</i> meli-
et <i>hæc</i>			et <i>hæ</i>		ora,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Meli-oris,		G. <i>hor.</i>	Meli-orum,	
D. <i>hūic</i>	Meli-ori,		har. <i>hor.</i>		
A. <i>hunc</i>	Meli-orem,	hoc meli-	D. <i>his</i>	Meli-oribus,	
et <i>hanc</i>	us,		A. <i>hos</i>	Meli-ores,	<i>hæc</i> meli-
V. <i>ō</i>	Meli-or,	et meli-us,	et <i>has</i>		ora,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> ,	Meli-ore,	vel meli-	V. <i>ō</i>	Meli-ores,	et meli-ora,
<i>hæc, hoc,</i>	ori.		A. <i>ab his</i>	Meli-oribus.	

Singular.

N. <i>hic</i> ,	Fel-ix,		N. <i>hi</i>	Feli-ces,	<i>hæc</i> feli-cia,
<i>hæc, hoc</i>			et <i>hæ</i>		
G. <i>hujus</i>	Fel-icis,		G. <i>hor.</i>	Feli-cium,	
D. <i>hūic</i>	Fel-ici,		har. <i>hor.</i>		
A. <i>hunc</i>	Feli-cem,	hoc fel-ix,	D. <i>his</i>	Feli-cibus,	
et <i>hanc</i>			A. <i>hos</i>	Feli-ces,	<i>hæc</i> feli-cia,
V. <i>ō</i>	Fel-ix,		et <i>has</i>		
A. <i>ab hoc</i> ,	Feli-ce,	vel feli-ci.	V. <i>ō</i>	Feli-ces,	et feli-cia,
<i>hæc, hoc</i>			A. <i>ab his</i>	Feli-cibus.	

Ambo, both, and *duo*, two, are nouns adjective; and are thus declined in the plural number only:

Nom.	Anb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	both,
Gen.	Amb-ōrum,	amb-árum,	amb-ōrum,	of both,
Dat.	Amb-ōbus,	amb-ábus,	amb-ōbus,	to both,
Acc.	Amb-os,	amb-as,	amb-o,	both,
Voc.	Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	both,
Abl.	Amb-ōbus,	amb-ábus,	amb-ōbus,	with both.

COMPARISON

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.*

ADJECTIVES have three degrees of signification, or comparison.

I. The positive ; which denotes the quality of a thing absolutely, as *doctus*, learned ; *brevis* short.

II. The comparative; which increases or lessens the quality, as *doctior*, more learned ; *brevior*, shorter, or more short.

And it is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or*, in the masculine and feminine genders, and *us*, in the neuter : as of

Doctus, gen. *docti*, is formed *hic et hæc doctior*, *hoc doctius*, more learned ; of

Brevis, dat. *brevi*, is formed *hic et hæc brevior*, *hoc brevius*, shorter, or more short.

III. The superlative ; which increases or diminishes

* COMPARISON IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE.

1. Adjectives in *dicus*, *volus*, *ficus*, *loquus*, make *entior* and *entissimus*; as *maledicus*, *benevolus*, *munificus*, *multiloquus*. Except *mirificus*, *mirificentior*, *mirificissimus*, vel *mirificentissimus*.

2. To irregulars, add *dexter*, *dexterior*, *dextimus*; *sinister*, *sinisterior*, *sinistimus*; *posterus*, *posterior*, *postremus*; *etus*, *veterior*, *veterrimus*; *maturus*, *maturior*, *maturrimus*, and *maturissimus*.

3. To those wanting the POSITIVE, add *citerior*, *citimus*; *deterior*, *deterrimus*; *interior*, *intimus*; *ocyor*, *occyssimus*; *potior*, *potissimus*.

4. To those wanting the COMPARATIVE; add *bellus*, *bellissimus*; *diversus*, *diversissimus*; *fidus*, *fidissimus*; *inclitus*, *inclytissimus*; *invictus*, *invictissimus*; *invitus*, *invitiissimus*; *meritus*, *meritissimus*; *mellitus*, *mellitissimus*; *novus*, *novissimus*; *nuperus*, *nuperrimus*; *par*, *parissimus*; *persuasus*, *persuassimus*; *sacer*, *sacerrius*.

5. To those wanting the SUPERLATIVE, add *adolescens*, *adolescentior*; *ingens*, *ingentior*; *diurnus*, *diurnior*; *pronus*, *pronior*; *satur*, *saturior*; *optimus*, *opimior*. Add most adjectives in *itis* and *itis*, having the penultima long, and in *bilis*; as *civilis*, *civilior*; *capitalis*, *capitalior*; *flebilis*, *flebilior*. Add also *arcanus*, *dectivus*, *proctivus*, *longinquus*, *propinquus*.

6. The following want the POSITIVE and SUPERLATIVE; *anterior*, *sequior*, *satior*.

7. Participles in *rus* and *dus*, adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *orbus*, *icbus*, and in *us* after a vowel, WANT COMPARISON; as *amaturus*, *amandus*, *pubdibus*, *legitimus*, *matutinus*, *canorus*, *modicus*, *vacuus*, and many others. But *assiduus*, *assiduissimus*; *pius*, *piissimus*; *strenuus*, *strenuissimus*; and several more, are read.

the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree ; as *doctissimus*, most learned ; *brevissimus*, the shortest or most short.

And it is formed also of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus* ; as of

Gen. docti, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned.

Dat. brevi, is formed *brevissimus*, shortest, or most short.

Note. Many adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparison irregularly ; as,

Bonus, good ; *melior*, better ; *optimus*, best.

Malus, bad ; *pejor*, worse ; *pessimus*, worst.

Magnus, great ; *major*, greater ; *maximus*, greatest.

Parvus, little ; *minor*, less ; *minimus*, least.

Multus, much ; *plus*, more ; *plurimus*, most.

Dives, rich ; *ditior*, more rich ; *ditissimus*, most rich.

Nequam, wicked ; *nequior*, more wicked ; *nequissimus*, most wicked.

Externus, outward ; *exterior*, more outward ; *extremus*, *vel extimus*, uttermost, or most outward.

Inferus, low ; *inferior*, lower, or more low ; *infanus*, *vel imus*, lowest, or most low.

Superus, high ; *superior*, higher, or more high ; *supremus*, *vel summus*, highest, or most high.

Intus, inward ; *interior*, more inward ; *intimus*, innermost, or most inward.

Juvenis, young ; *junior*, younger, or more young.

Senex, old ; *senior*, older, or more old.

Prior, former ; *primus*, first.

Propior, nearer ; *proximus*, nearest, or most near.

Ulterior, farther ; *ultimus*, last.—With some others.

Adjectives ending in *er*, form the superlative degree from the nominative case, by adding *rimus* ; as of *pulcher*, fair, *pulcher-rimus*, fairest, or most fair.

Adjectives ending in *lis*, form the superlative degree according to the general rule ; as of *utilis*, useful, *Dat. utili*, is formed *utili-seimus*, most useful.

Except the following, which change is into *limus* ; as, *Agil-is*, nimble ; *agil-limus*, nimblest, or most nimble. *Facil-is*, easy ; *facil-limus*, easiest, or most easy.

Gracil-is,

Gracil-is, slender ; *gracil-limus*, slenderest, or most slender.

Humil-is, low ; *humil-limus*, lowest, or most low.

Simil-is, like ; *simil-limus*, likest, or most like.

Also, If a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case of an adjective, the comparison is made by *magis*, more; and *maxime*, most : as,

Pius, godly ; *magis pius*, more godly ; *maxime pius*, most godly.

OF A PRONOUN.*

A PRONOUN is used instead of a noun, and is declined with number, case, and gender.

There are fifteen pronouns.

Ego, I ; *ipse*, himself ; *suis*, his ;
tu, thou or you ; *iste*, that ; *noster*, ours ;
ille, he ; *hic*, this ; *vester*, yours ;
is, he ; *meus*, mine ; *nostras*, of our country ;
sui, of himself ; *tuus*, thine ; *vestras*, of your country.

To these may be added their compounds, *egomet*, I myself ; *tute*, thou thyself ; *idem*, the same ; also the relative *qui*, who, or what ; and *cujas*, of what country.

* 1. Pronouns express three persons : the speaker, *ego*; the person to whom we speak, *tu*; and the persons of whom, or the thing of which, something is spoken, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*.

2. These compounds are REGULAR ; *egomet*, *tutem*, G. *tuimet*, &c. *ego ipse*, *tu ipse*, *sui ipsius*, *quisque*, *unusquisque*, *quisquam*, *quienam*, *quispiam*, *quicquid*, *quilibet*, *quicunque*.

3. The following are IRREGULAR ; N. *istic*, *istæ*, *istoc*, v. *istuc* ; Ab. *istoc*, *istæ*, *istoc* ; so *illic* ; *hicce* has all the cases having *c* or *s* before the particle *ce* ; and *hiccine*, all the cases having *c* before *cine*. *Siquis* and *ecquis* make *qua* or *qua*.

4. These are monoptots, or have only one case ; N. *tute* ; G. *ejusde*, *cujusde*, *hujus-modi*, *ejus-modi*, *cujus-modi*, or *hujusce-modi*, &c. Ac. *tete*, *sece* ; *eccum*, *eccam* ; *eccas* ; *ellum*, *ellam* ; *ellos*, *ellas* ; Ab. *pte* is put after the ablatives, *med*, *tud*, *sud*, *nostrd*, *vestrd*, and sometimes after their masculines ; as *medpte*, *medpte*. Also *cum* is put after *me*, *te*, *se*, *quo*, *qud*, *qui*, and *quibus* ; as *tecum*, &c.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Ego, tu, sui, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. <i>Ego</i> ,	<i>I</i> ,	Nom. <i>Nos</i> ,	<i>we</i> ,
Gen. <i>Mei</i> ,	<i>of me</i> ,	Gen. <i>Nostr-ūm</i> ,	<i>vel-ī, of us</i> ,
Dat. <i>Mihi</i> ,	<i>to me</i> ,	Dat. <i>Nobis</i> ,	<i>to us</i> ,
Acc. <i>Me</i> ,	<i>me</i> ,	Acc. <i>Nos</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
Voc. —		Voc. —	
Abl. <i>Me</i> ,	<i>from or by me</i> .	Abl. <i>Nobis</i> ,	<i>from or by us</i> .

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. <i>Tu</i> ,	<i>thou or you</i> ,	Nom. <i>Vos</i> .	<i>ye or you, [you,</i>
Gen. <i>Tui</i> ,	<i>of thee or you</i> ,	Gen. <i>Vestr-ūm</i> ,	<i>vel-ī, of ye or</i>
Dat. <i>Tibi</i> ,	<i>to thee or you</i> ,	Dat. <i>Vobis</i> ,	<i>to ye or you</i> ,
Acc. <i>Te</i> ,	<i>thee or you</i> ,	Acc. <i>Vos</i> ,	<i>ye or you,</i>
Voc. <i>tu</i> ,	<i>o thou or you</i> ,	Voc. <i>o Vos</i> ,	<i>o ye,</i>
Abl. <i>Te</i> ,	<i>with thee or you</i> .	Abl. <i>Vobis</i> ,	<i>with ye or you.</i>

Sui, of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined:

Singular and Plural.			
Gen.	<i>Sui</i> ,	<i>of himself</i> ,	
Dat.	<i>Sibi</i> ,	<i>to himself</i> ,	
Acc.	<i>Se</i> ,	<i>himself</i> ,	<i>herself, themselves, &c.</i>
Abl.	<i>Se</i> ,	<i>by himself</i> ,	

Ille, he ; illa, she ; and iste, that ; are thus declined:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ille</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,	<i>ill-ud</i> ,	N. <i>Ill-i</i> ,	<i>ill-æ</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,
G. <i>Ill-ius</i> ,			G. <i>Ill-ōrum</i> ,	<i>ill-ārum</i> ,	<i>ill-ōrum</i> ,
D. <i>Ill-i</i> ,			D. <i>Ill-is</i> ,		
A. <i>Ill-um</i> ,	<i>ill-am</i> ,	<i>ill-ud</i> ,	A. <i>Ill-os</i> ,	<i>ill-as</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,
V. —			V. —		
A. <i>Ill-o</i> ,	<i>ill-ā</i> ,	<i>ill-o</i> .	A. <i>Ill-is</i> .		

In like manner is also declined *ipse*, he himself ; except that the nominative and accusative cases singular make *ipsum* in the neuter gender.

Is, he, she, or that ; and qui, who ; are thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. <i>Is</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	Nom. <i>Ii</i> ,	<i>eæ</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
Gen. <i>Ejus</i> ,			Gen. <i>Eórum, eárum,</i>	<i>eórum,</i>	
Dat. <i>Ei</i> ,			Dat. <i>Iis, vel eis,</i>		
Acc. <i>Eum</i> ,	<i>eam</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	Acc. <i>Eos</i> ,	<i>eas</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
Voc. —			Voc. —		
Abl. <i>Eo</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	<i>eo</i> .	Abl. <i>Iis, vel eis.</i>		

In like manner also is declined its compound *idem*, the same ; as, Nom. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, Gen. *ejusdem*, &c.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. <i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	Non. <i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
Gen. <i>Cujus</i> ,			Gen. <i>Quorum, quarum, quorum,</i>		
Dat. <i>Cui</i> ,			Dat. <i>Quibus, vel queis,</i>		
Acc. <i>Quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	Acc. <i>Quos</i> ,	<i>quas</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
Voc. —			Voc. —		
Abl. <i>Quo</i> ,	<i>quā</i> ,	<i>quo, vel qui.</i>	Abl. <i>Quibus vel queis.</i>		

In like manner also are declined its compounds, *quidam*, a certain one ; *quibus*, *quilibet*, any one ; *quicunque*, whatsoever.

Quis, *quæ*, *quid*, or *quod*, who, or what, is declined like *qui* ; as are also *aliquis*, and other compounds of *quis* ; these for the most part make the feminine gender of the nominative case singular, and the neuter of the nominative and accusative cases plural, in *qua*.

Quisquis, whosoever ; is thus declined :

Nom.	<i>Quisquis</i> ,	<i>quidquid</i> , or <i>quicquid</i> ,
Acc.	<i>Quidquid</i> , or <i>quicquid</i> ,	
Abl.	<i>Quoquo</i> ,	<i>quaquā</i> , <i>quoquo</i> .

Meus, tuus, suus, are declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mi* in the vocative case singular masculine ; and *tuus, suus*, with many other pronouns, have no vocative case.

Nostras, vestras, and *cujas*, are declined, Nom. *nostras*, Gen. *nostratis*, like *felix*.

OF A VERB.

A VERB* is the chief word in every sentence, and expresses either the *Action*, or *Being*, of a thing.

Of VERBS there are two Voices.

1. The active, ending in *o*, as *amo*, I love.

2. The passive, ending in *or*, as *amor*, I am loved.

Of verbs ending in *o*; some are actives transitive, as *vinco*, I conquer : and these by changing *o* into *or* become

* 1. Though verbs are generally distributed into *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, and *deponent*, grammarians have adopted other distinctions ; as *frequentatives*, *inceptives*, and *meditatives* : the *first* signify frequent action, as *vicio*, to call often ; the *second*, gradual increase, as *caesco*, to grow hot. and the *third*, desire, as *curio*, to desire to eat.

2. Five verbs in *o* have a passive sense, and are called *neuter-passives*, *exulo*, *fio*, *liceo*, *vapulo*, *veneo*.

3. The potential mood carries in it the force of *debo*, *possum*, or *velo*, with an infinitive.

4. The infinitive mood is by some called a verbal noun.

5. The proper and precise use of some of the *tenses* depends on niceties, which can be acquired only by studying the best authors : but the following observations may be of use.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE TENSES.

A present action is put in the present tense.

A past action, spoken of as contemporary with something past, takes the imperfect tense ; as *ludebam cum magister venit*.

It also notes the custom of doing a thing : as *observabam*, *servulos rogabam* : Ter. *Avo puerum Astyanacta trahebat* : Vir.

An action absolutely past takes the perfect ; for which the present too is often used, especially in poetical language.

The pluperfect speaks of a thing past as done before, and in reference to, something else past ; as *postquam id audierat*, *nunquam cuquam verbum fecit* : Ter.

But after *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *antequam*, and also after *ut* and *ut* used for *postquam*, the perfect is commonly used for it : as *Hi, postquam in una mania convenire, facile coaluerunt* : Sal. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit, monitum fupulit in latus* : Vir. After *cum* it should have been *convenissent*, *dedisset*.

A future action is put in the future tense.

The future, potential, belongs sometimes to the indicative, and is then called the perfect or second future, and speaks of a future action supposed to have been done previous to something else that is future : as *si te arguo animo ferre accipies, negligentem feceris* : Ter.

The

come verbs passive; as *vincor*, I am conquered; some are named neuters and intransitives, as *gaudeo*, I am glad; and these are never made passives.

Some verbs ending in *or* are called deponents, and have an active signification, as *loquor*, I speak; and some few are neuters, as *glorior*, I boast.

Note 1. That verbs neuter ending in *or*, and verbs deponent, are declined like verbs passive; but with gerunds and supines, like verbs active.

2. A verb is called transitive when the action passes

The present, potential, is often used for the imperative; sometimes also the perfect and future are so used: as *ne id dicas*; *ne respexeris*; *illis viderint*.

The perfect, potential, is put for the present, in certain weak forms of denying or affirming; as *crediderim*, I am inclined to believe; *haud affirmaverim*, I can scarce affirm; also for the future; as *si te inde exeremus*, *ego pro te molam*: Ter.

The pluperfect, subjunctive, has a future sense with the signs, *would* or *should*; when the future action spoken of in the correspondent clause supposes this to take place before; as *Helvetios ibi futuros*, *ubi Caesar constitueret*; Cæs. Sometimes it corresponds with the clause of the present tense; as *quasi pollui consulatum credebat*, *si cum homo novus adeptus foret*. Sal.

Sum, joined to the passive participle, perfect, speaks of a thing *immediately* or *indefinitely* past; *fui*, a thing past a *good while* ago. as *prænus sum*, *prænus fui*.

Sum, joined to the future in *rus*, often serves for the future active, to signify intention: as *dicturus sum*, I will speak. Joined to the future in *du*, it serves for the passive future, and signifies *duty* or *necessity*: as *haec mihi dicenda sunt*, these things *shall* or *must* be mentioned by me.

The future passive, infinitive, formed with *iri*, is the supine, and therefore remains unchanged, contrary to the form of other constructions; as *ascerem non datum iri*: Ter.

6. It may be observed that, except in their characteristics, the four conjugations vary little from each other in their terminations: the future indicative of the first two ends in *bo*, of the last two in *am*; the present potential of the first ends in *em*, of the last three in *am*; the second person singular of the imperative of the first ends in *a*; of the second and third in *e*; and of the fourth in *i*. The present of the indicative varies in all the conjugations in its inflection.

7. In conjugating, observe verbs have three radical parts; the PRESENT, PERFECT, and SUPINE, from which all other parts are derived: as from

AM-O, -abam, -abo, -a, -ato, -em, -arem, -are, -andi, ando, -andum, -ans, -andus.

AMAV-I, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse.

AM-ATUM, -atus, -aturus.

on to the noun following, as *vinco te*, I conquer thee; *veneror Deum*, I worship God.

3. A verb is called intransitive, or neuter, when the action does not pass on, or require a following noun; as *curro*, I run; *glorior*, I boast.

4. Verbs that have different persons are called verbs personal; as *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest.

And such as have not different persons are called verbs impersonal; as *tædet*, it irketh; *oporet*, it behoveth.

OF MOODS.

THERE are five moods; the indicative, imperative, potential, subjunctive, and the infinitive.

The indicative mood either declareth a thing positively, as *ego amo*, I do love; or asketh a question, as *amas tu*, dost thou love?

The imperative mood commandeth, or entreateth, as *veni huc*, come hither; *parce mihi*, spare me; it is also known by the sign *let*; as *eamus*, let us go.

The potential mood signifies *power* or *duty*; and is commonly known by these signs, *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *could*, *should*, or *ought*; as *amem*, I may love, *amavissem*, I should have loved; and the like.

The subjunctive mood differs from the potential, only as it is subjoined to another verb going before it in the same sentence, and has evermore some conjunction or indefinite word joined to it; as *eram miser cum amarem*, I was a wretch when I loved; *nescio qualis sit*, I know not what sort of a man he is.

The infinitive mood has neither number, person, nor nominative case before it; and is known commonly by this sign, *to*; as *amare*, to love.

OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have three gerunds, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which have commonly an active signification, as *amandi*, of loving; *amando*, in loving; *amandum*, to love.

The

The supines of verbs are two ;
The one ending in *um*, which signifies actively, as *en amáum*, I go to love.

The other ending in *u*, and hath, for the most part, a passive signification: as *difficilis amáu*, hard to be loved.

OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

IN Verbs there are five tenses, or times, expressing an action or affirmation : the present, the preterimperfect, the preterperfect, the preterpluperfect, and the future.

1. The present tense speaketh of a thing present, or now doing ; as *amo*, I love, or am loving.

2. The preterimperfect tense speaketh of a thing that was done at some time past, but not ended ; as *anábam* I did love, or was loving.

3. The preterperfect tense speaketh of a thing lately done ; as *amávi*, I have loved.

4. The preterpluperfect tense refers to a thing done at some time past, and now ended ; as *amaveram*, I had loved.

5. The future tense speaketh of a thing to be done hereafter ; as *amábo*, I shall or will love.

OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two numbers, singular and plural, like unto nouns, and three persons in each number ; as.

Sing. *Ego amo*, I love.

Tu amas, thou lovest.

Ille amat, he loveth.

Plur. *Nos amamus*, We love.

Vos amatis, ye love.

Illi amant, they love.

Note, That all nouns are of the third Person, except *ego*, *nos*, *tu*; and *vos*: *Also*, that all nouns of the Vocative Case are of the second Person.

Of the Verb *Esse*, to be.

BEFORE other verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the verb esse, to be.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Sum,	<i>I am.</i>
	Es,	<i>thou art.</i>
	Est,	<i>he is.</i>
Plur.	Sumus,	<i>We are.</i>
	Estis,	<i>ye are.</i>
	Sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing.	Eram,	<i>I was.</i>
	Eras,	<i>thou wast.</i>
	Erat,	<i>he was.</i>
Plur.	Eramus,	<i>We were.</i>
	Eratis,	<i>ye were.</i>
	Erant,	<i>they were.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
	Fuisti,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
	Fuit,	<i>he hath been.</i>
Plur.	Fuimus,	<i>We have been.</i>
	Fuistis,	<i>ye have been.</i>
	Fuérunt vel fuére,	<i>they have been.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Fueram,	<i>I had been.</i>
	Fueras,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
	Fuerat,	<i>he had been.</i>
Plur.	Fueramus,	<i>We had been.</i>
	Fueratis,	<i>ye had been.</i>
	Fuerant,	<i>they had been.</i>

5. Future

5. Future Tense.—*shall* or *will*.

Sing.	Ero,	<i>I shall or will be.</i>
	Eris,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be.</i>
	Erit,	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
Plur.	Erimus,	<i>We shall or will be.</i>
	Eritis,	<i>ye shall or will be.</i>
	Erant,	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first Person.*

Sing.	Sis, es, esto,	<i>Be thou.</i>
	Sit, esto,	<i>be he, or let him be.</i>
Plur.	Simus,	<i>Be we, or let us be.</i>
	Sitis, este, estóte,	<i>be ye.</i>
	Sint, sunto,	<i>be they, or let them be.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may* or *can*.

Sing.	Sim,	<i>I may or can be.</i>
	Sis,	<i>thou mayst or canst be.</i>
	Sit,	<i>he may or can be.</i>
Plur.	Simus,	<i>We may or can be.</i>
	Sitis,	<i>ye may or can be.</i>
	Sint,	<i>they may or can be.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might* or *could*.

Sing.	Essem vel forem,	<i>I might or could be.</i>
	Esses vel fores,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be.</i>
	Esset vel foret,	<i>he might or could be.</i>
Plur.	Essémus vel forémus,	<i>We might or could be.</i>
	Essétis vel forétis,	<i>ye might or could be.</i>
	Essent vel forent,	<i>they might or could be.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may have, should have, &c.*

Sing.	Fuerim,	<i>I may or should have been.</i>
	Fueris,	<i>thou mayst or shouldst have been.</i>
	Fuerit,	<i>he may or should have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuerimus,	<i>We may or should have been.</i>
	Fueritis,	<i>ye may or should have been.</i>
	Fuerint,	<i>they may or should have been.</i>

4. Preter-

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, would have, &c.*

Sing.	Fuissem,	<i>I might or would have been.</i>
	Fuisses,	<i>thou mightst or wouldst have been.</i>
	Fuisset,	<i>he might or would have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuissémus,	<i>We might or would have been.</i>
	Fuissétis,	<i>ye might or would have been.</i>
	Fuissent,	<i>they might or would have been.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing.	Fuero,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
	Fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been.</i>
	Fuerit,	<i>he shall have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been.</i>
	Fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been.</i>
	Fuerint.	<i>they shall have been.</i>

The Subjunctive Mood is declined like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Esse, *to be.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Fuisse, *to have been.*

Future Tense.

Fore *vel* Futúrum esse, *to be about to be.*

Participle of the Future in *rus.*

Futúrus, *about to be.*

DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

VERBS have four conjugations, both in the active and passive voice.

The first conjugation of Verbs active hath *a* long, before *re* and *ris*; as *amāre, amāris.*

The second hath *e* long, before *re* and *ris*: as *monēre, monēris.*

The third hath *e* short, before *re* and *ris*: as *regēre, regēris.*

The

The fourth hath ; long, before *re* and *ris*; as *audīre*, *audīris*.

VERBS ACTIVE in *O*, are declined after these examples.

1. *Am-o*, *am-as*, *amá-vi*, *am-āre*; *am-ándi*, *amán-do*,
amán-dum; *amát-um*, *amát-u*; *am-ans*, *amatú-rus*: *to
love*.

2. *Mon-eo*, *mon-es*, *mon-ui*, *mon-ēre*; *monen-di*,
monén-do, *monén-dum*; *monit-um*, *monit-u*; *mon-ens*,
monitú-rus: *to advise*.

3. *Reg-o*, *reg-is*, *rex-i*, *reg-ēre*; *regén-di*, *regén-do*,
regén-dum; *rect-um*, *rect-u*; *reg-ens*, *rectú-rus*: *to
rule or govern*.

4. *Aud-io*, *aud-is*, *aud-ívi*, *aud-īre*; *audién-di*, *au-
dién-do*, *audién-dum*; *audít-um*, *audít-u*; *audi-ens*,
auditú-rus: *to hear*.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing.	<i>Am-o,</i> <i>am-as,</i> <i>am-at,</i>	<i>I love, am loving, or do love.</i> <i>thou lovest, art loving, ordost love.</i> <i>he loveth, is loving, or doth love.</i>
Plur.	<i>Am-ámus,</i> <i>am-átis,</i> <i>am-ant,</i>	<i>We love, are loving, or do love.</i> <i>ye love, are loving, or do love.</i> <i>they love, are loving, or do love.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	<i>Am-ábam,</i> <i>am-ábas,</i> <i>am-ábat,</i>	<i>I did love, or was loving.</i> <i>thou didst love, or wast loving.</i> <i>he did love, or was loving.</i>
Plur.	<i>Am-abámus,</i> <i>am-abátis,</i> <i>am-ábant,</i>	<i>We did love, or were loving.</i> <i>ye did love, or were loving.</i> <i>they did love, or were loving.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	<i>Amáv-i,</i> <i>amav-isti,</i> <i>amáv-it,</i>	<i>I loved, or have loved.</i> <i>thou lovedst, or hast loved.</i> <i>he loved, or hath loved.</i>
		Plur.

Plur. Amav-imus,	<i>We loved, or have loved.</i>
amav-ístis,	<i>ye loved, or have loved.</i>
amav-érunt, <i>vel</i> -ére,	<i>they loved, or have loved.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Amav-eram,	<i>I had loved.</i>
amav-eras,	<i>thou hadst loved.</i>
amav-erat,	<i>he had loved.</i>
Plur. Amav-éramus,	<i>We had loved.</i>
amav-ératis,	<i>ye had loved.</i>
amav-erant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall* or *will.*

Sing. Am-ábo,	<i>I shall or will love.</i>
am-ábis,	<i>thou shalt or wilt love.</i>
am-ábít,	<i>he shall or will love.</i>
Plur. Am-ábimus,	<i>We shall or will love.</i>
am-ábitis,	<i>ye shall or will love.</i>
am-ábunt,	<i>they shall or will love.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first person.*

Sing. Am-a, am-áto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love.</i>
am-et, am-áto,	<i>love he, or let him love.</i>
Plur. Am-émus,	<i>Love we, or let us love.</i>
am-áte, am-átóte,	<i>love ye, or do ye love.</i>
am-ent, am-ánto,	<i>love they, or let them love.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing. Am-em,	<i>I may or can love.</i>
am-es,	<i>thou mayst or canst love.</i>
am-et,	<i>he may or can love.</i>
Plur. Am-émus,	<i>We may or can love.</i>
am-étis,	<i>ye may or can love.</i>
am-ent,	<i>they may or can love.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing. Am-árem,	<i>I might or could love.</i>
am-áres,	<i>thou mightst or couldst love.</i>
am-áret,	<i>he might or could love.</i>

Plur.

Plur. Am-áremus,	<i>We might or could love.</i>
am-áretis,	<i>ye might or could love.</i>
am-arent,	<i>they might or could love.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

Sing. Amav-erim,	<i>I should have loved.</i>
amav-eris,	<i>thou shouldst have loved.</i>
amav-erit,	<i>he should have loved.</i>
Plur. Amav-erimus,	<i>We should have loved.</i>
amav-eritis,	<i>ye should have loved.</i>
amav-erint,	<i>they should have loved.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing. Amav-issem,	<i>I would have loved.</i>
amav-issemes,	<i>thou wouldst have loved.</i>
amav-isset,	<i>he would have loved.</i>
Plur. Amav-issémus,	<i>We would have loved.</i>
amav-isséritis,	<i>ye would have loved.</i>
amav-isssent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing. Amav-ero,	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
amav-eris,	<i>thou shalt have loved.</i>
amav-erit,	<i>he shall have loved.</i>
Plur. Amav-erimus,	<i>We shall have loved.</i>
amav-eritis,	<i>ye shall have loved.</i>
amav-erint,	<i>they shall have loved.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Am-áre, *to love.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Amav-isse, *to have loved.*

Future Tense.

Amatú-rum esse, *to be about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Amán-di,	<i>of loving.</i>
Amán-do,	<i>in loving.</i>
Amán-dum,	<i>to love.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Amát-um, <i>to love</i> ;	Amát-u, <i>to be loved</i> .

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus</i> .
Am-ans, <i>loving</i> ;	Amatú-rus, <i>about to love</i> .

Obs. In VERBS, several tenses are formed of the preterperfect tense of the indicative mood, as of *amav-i* are formed;

1. The preterpluperf. of the same mood, *amav-eram*.
2. The preterperf. of the potential mood, *amav-erim*.
3. The preterpluperf. of the same mood, *amav-issem*.
4. The future tense of the same mood, *amav-ero*.
5. The preterperfect tense of the infinitive mood, *amav-isse*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, an*.

Sing. Mon-eo,	<i>I advise, am advising, or do advise.</i>
mon-es,	<i>thou advisest, art advising, or dost advise.</i>
mon-et,	<i>he adviseth, is advising, or doth advise.</i>
Plur. Mon-émus,	<i>We advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>
mon-étis,	<i>ye advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>
mon-ent,	<i>they advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was*.

Sing. Mon-ébam,	<i>I did advise, or was advising.</i>
mon-ébas,	<i>thou didst advise, or wast advising.</i>
mon-ébat,	<i>he did advise, or was advising.</i>
Plur. Mon-ébamus,	<i>We did advise, or were advising.</i>
mon-ébatis,	<i>ye did advise, or were advising.</i>
mon-ébant,	<i>they did advise, or were advising.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have*.

Sing. Monu-i,	<i>I advised, or have advised.</i>
monu-isti,	<i>thou advisedst, or hast advised.</i>
monu-it,	<i>he advised, or hath advised.</i>

Plur.

Plur. Monu-imus, monu-istis, monu-érunt, <i>vel</i> -ére,	<i>We advised, or have advised. ye advised, or have advised. they advised, or have advised.</i>
--	---

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Monu-eram, monu-eras, monu-erat,	<i>I had advised. thou hadst advised. he had advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-éramus, monu-ératis, monu-erant,	<i>We had advised. ye had advised. they had advised.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall* or *will.*

Sing. Moné-bo, moné-bis, moné-bit,	<i>I shall or will advise. thou shalt or wilt advise. he shall or will advise.</i>
Plur. Moné-bimus, moné-bitis, moné-bunt,	<i>We shall or will advise. ye shall or will advise. they shall or will advise.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first person.*

Sing. Mon-e, mon-éto, mon-eat, mon-éto,	<i>Advise thou, or do thou advise. advise he, or let him advise.</i>
Plur. Mon-eámus, mon-éte, mon-étoé, mon-eant, mon-ento,	<i>Advise we, or let us advise. advise ye, or do ye advise. advise they, or let them advise.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing. Mone-am, mone-as, mone-at,	<i>I may or can advise. thou mayst or canst advise. he may or can advise.</i>
Plur. Mone-ámus, mone-átis, mone-ant,	<i>We may or can advise. ye may or can advise. they may or can advise.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing. Moné-rem, mone-res, mone-ret,	<i>I might or could advise. thou mightst or couldst advise. he might or could advise.</i>
	<i>Plur.</i>

Plur. Mone-rémus,	<i>We might or could advise.</i>
mone-rétis,	<i>ye might or could advise.</i>
mone-rent,	<i>they might or could advise.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—should have, may have.

Sing. Monu-erim,	<i>I should have advised.</i>
monu-eris,	<i>thou shouldst have advised.</i>
monu-erit,	<i>he should have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-erimus,	<i>We should have advised.</i>
monu-eritis,	<i>ye should have advised.</i>
monu-erint,	<i>they should have advised.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—would, might, could have.

Sing. Monu-íssem,	<i>I would have advised.</i>
monu-ísses,	<i>thou wouldst have advised.</i>
monu-ísset,	<i>he would have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-íssémus,	<i>We would have advised.</i>
monu-íssétis,	<i>ye would have advised.</i>
monu-íssent,	<i>they would have advised.</i>

5. Future Tense.—shall have.

Sing. Monu-ero,	<i>I shall have advised.</i>
monu-eris,	<i>thou shalt have advised.</i>
monu-erit,	<i>he shall have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-erimus,	<i>We shall have advised.</i>
monu-eritis,	<i>ye shall have advised.</i>
monu-erint,	<i>they shall have advised.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Mon-ére, *to advise.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Monu-ísse, *to have advised.*

Future Tense.

Monitú-rum esse, *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Monén-di,	<i>of advising.</i>
monén-do,	<i>in advising.</i>
monén-dum,	<i>to advise.</i>

SUPINES.

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Monit-um, to advise;	Monit-u, to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus</i> .
Mon-ens, advising;	Monitú-rus, about to advise.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rego.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Reg-o,	<i>I rule, am ruling, or do rule.</i>
reg-is,	<i>thou rulest, art ruling, or do rule.</i>
reg-it,	<i>he ruleth, is ruling, or doth rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-imus,	<i>We rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>
reg-itis,	<i>ye rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>
reg-unt,	<i>they rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Regé-bam,	<i>I did rule, or was ruling.</i>
regé-has,	<i>thou didst rule, or wast ruling.</i>
regé-bat,	<i>he did rule, or was ruling.</i>
Plur. Rege-bámus,	<i>We did rule, or were ruling.</i>
rege-bátis,	<i>ye did rule, or were ruling.</i>
regé-bant,	<i>they did rule, or were ruling.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Rex-i,	<i>I ruled, or have ruled.</i>
rex-isti,	<i>thou ruledst, or hast ruled.</i>
rex-it,	<i>he ruled, or hath ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-imus,	<i>We ruled, or have ruled.</i>
rex-istis,	<i>ye ruled, or have ruled.</i>
rex-érunt, <i>vel</i> -ére,	<i>they ruled, or have ruled.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled.</i>
rex-eras,	<i>thou hadst ruled.</i>
rex-erat,	<i>he had ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-erámus,	<i>We had ruled.</i>
rex-erátis,	<i>ye had ruled.</i>
rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

5. Future

5. Future Tense.—*shall* or *will*.

Sing. Reg-am,	<i>I shall or will rule.</i>
reg-es,	<i>thou, shalt or wilt rule.</i>
reg-et,	<i>he shall or will rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-émus,	<i>We shall or will rule.</i>
reg-étis,	<i>ye shall or will rule.</i>
reg-ent,	<i>they shall or will rule.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first person.*

Sing. Reg-e, reg-ito,	<i>Rule thou, or do thou rule.</i>
reg-at, reg-ito,	<i>rule he, or let him rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-ámus,	<i>Rule we, or let us rule.</i>
reg-ite, reg-itóte,	<i>rule ye, or do ye rule.</i>
reg-ant, reg-únto,	<i>rule they, or let them rule.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing. Reg-am,	<i>I may or can rule.</i>
reg-as,	<i>thou mayst or canst rule.</i>
reg-at,	<i>he may or can rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-ámus,	<i>We may or can rule.</i>
reg-átis,	<i>ye may or can rule.</i>
reg-ant,	<i>they may or can rule.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing. Reg-erem,	<i>I might or could rule.</i>
reg-eres,	<i>thou mightst or couldst rule.</i>
reg-eret,	<i>he might or could rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-erémus,	<i>We might or could rule.</i>
reg-crétis,	<i>ye might or could rule.</i>
reg-erent,	<i>they might or could rule.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

Sing. Rex-erim,	<i>I should have ruled.</i>
rex-eris,	<i>thou shouldst have ruled.</i>
rex-erit,	<i>he should have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-erimus,	<i>We should have ruled.</i>
rex-eritis,	<i>ye should have ruled,</i>
rex-erint,	<i>they should have ruled.</i>

4. Preterplu-

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing.	Rex-issim,	<i>I would have ruled.</i>
	rex-isses,	<i>thou wouldst have ruled.</i>
	rex-isset,	<i>he would have ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rex-issimus,	<i>We would have ruled.</i>
	rex-isséti,	<i>ye would have ruled.</i>
	rex-isset,	<i>they would have ruled.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing.	Rex-ero,	<i>I shall have ruled.</i>
	rex-eris,	<i>thou shalt have ruled.</i>
	rex-erit,	<i>he shall have ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rex-erimus,	<i>We shall have ruled.</i>
	rex-eritis,	<i>ye shall have ruled.</i>
	rex-erint,	<i>they shall have ruled.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Reg-ere, *to rule.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Rex-isse, *to have ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rectú-rum esse, *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Regén-di,	<i>of ruling.</i>
regén-do,	<i>in ruling.</i>
regén-dum,	<i>to rule.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Rect-um, <i>to rule;</i>	Rect-u, <i>to be ruled.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus.</i>
Regens, <i>ruling;</i>	Rectú-rus, <i>about to rule.</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audio.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing.	Aud-i-o,	<i>I hear, am hearing, or do hear.</i>
	aud-i-s,	<i>thou hearest, art hearing, or dost hear.</i>
	aud-i-t,	<i>he heareth, is hearing, or doth hear.</i>
Plur.	Aud-i-mus,	<i>We hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>
	aud-i-tis,	<i>ye hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>
	aud-i-unt,	<i>they hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	Audié-bam,	<i>I did hear, or was hearing.</i>
	audié-bas,	<i>thou didst hear, or wast hearing.</i>
	audié-bat,	<i>he did hear, or was hearing.</i>
Plur.	Audie-bámus,	<i>We did hear, or were hearing.</i>
	audie-bátis,	<i>ye did hear, or were hearing.</i>
	audié-bant,	<i>they did hear, or were hearing.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Audív-i,	<i>I heard, or have heard.</i>
	audív-ísti,	<i>thou heardst, or hast heard.</i>
	audív-it,	<i>he heard, or hath heard.</i>
Plur.	Audív-imus,	<i>We heard, or have heard.</i>
	audív-ístis,	<i>ye heard, or have heard.</i>
	audív-érunt, <i>vel</i> -ére,	<i>they heard, or have heard.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Audiv-eram,	<i>I had heard.</i>
	audiv-eras,	<i>thou hadst heard.</i>
	audiv-erat,	<i>he had heard.</i>
Plur.	Audiv-erámus,	<i>We had heard.</i>
	audiv-erátis,	<i>ye had heard.</i>
	audiv-erant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will.*

Sing.	Audi-am,	<i>I shall or will hear.</i>
	audi-es,	<i>thou shalt or wilt hear.</i>
	audi-et,	<i>he shall or will hear.</i>
Plur.	Audi-émus,	<i>We shall or will hear.</i>
	audi-étis,	<i>ye shall or will hear.</i>
	audi-ent,	<i>they shall or will hear.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first person.*

Sing.	Aud-i, aud-ito, aud-iat, aud-ito,	Hear thou, or do thou hear. hear he, or let him hear.
Plur.	Aud-iámus, aud-i-te, aud-itóte, aud-i-ant, aud-iánto,	Hear we, or let us hear. hear ye, or do ye hear. hear they, or let them hear.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing.	Aud-i-am, aud-i-as, aud-i-at,	I may or can hear. thou mayst or canst hear. he may or can hear.
Plur.	Audi-ámus, audi-átis, audi-ant,	We may or can hear. ye may or can hear. they may or can hear.

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing.	Audi-rem, audi-res, audi-ret,	I might or could hear. thou mightst or couldst hear. he might or could hear.
Plur.	Audi-rémus, audi-rétis, audi-rent,	We might or could hear. ye might or could hear. they might or could hear.

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

Sing.	Audiv-erim, audiv-eris, audiv-erit,	I should have heard. thou shouldst have heard. he should have heard.
Plur.	Audiv-erimus, audiv-eritis, audiv-erint,	We should have heard. ye should have heard. they should have heard.

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing.	Audiv-issem, audiv-issem, audiv-isset,	I would have heard. thou wouldst have heard. he would have heard.
Plur.	Audiv-issémus, audiv-issétis, audiv-issem,	We would have heard. ye would have heard. they would have heard.

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing. Audiv-ero,	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
audiy-eris,	<i>thou shall have heard.</i>
audiy-erit,	<i>he shall have heard.</i>
Plur. Audiv-erimus,	<i>We shall have heard.</i>
audiy-eritis,	<i>ye shall have heard.</i>
audiy-erint,	<i>they shall have heard.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Aud-ire, *to hear.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Audiv-isse, *to have heard.*

Future Tense.

Auditú-rum esse, *to be about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Audién-di,	<i>of hearing.</i>
audién-do,	<i>in hearing.</i>
audién-dum,	<i>to hear.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Audit-um, <i>to hear;</i>	Audit-u, <i>to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus.</i>
Audi-ens, <i>hearing;</i>	Auditú-rus, <i>about to hear.</i>

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR*, are thus declined :

1. Am-or, am-áris *vel* am-áre, amát-us sum *vel* fui,
am-ári; amát-us, amán-dus : *to be loved.*
2. Mon-éor, mon-éris *vel* mon-ére, monit-us sum *vel*
fui, mon-éri; monit-us, monén-dus : *to be advised.*
3. Reg-or,

3. Reg-or, reg-ěris *vel* reg-ěre, rect-us sum *vel* fui,
reg-i; rect-us, regén-dus: *to be ruled.*

4. Aud-iор, aud-iris *vel* aud-ire, aud-itus sum *vel* fui,
aud-iri; aud-itus, audien-dus: *to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Am-or,	<i>I am loved.</i>
	am-áris <i>v.</i> am-áre,	<i>thou art loved.</i>
	am-átur,	<i>he is loved.</i>
Plur.	Am-ámur,	<i>We are loved.</i>
	am-ámini,	<i>ye are loved.</i>
	am-ántur,	<i>they are loved.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing.	Am-ábar,	<i>I was loved.</i>
	am-abáris <i>v.</i> am-abáre,	<i>thou wast loved.</i>
	am-abátur,	<i>he was loved.</i>
Plur.	Am-abámur,	<i>We were loved.</i>
	am-abámini,	<i>ye were loved.</i>
	am-abantur,	<i>they were loved.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing.	Amát-us sum <i>vel</i> fui,	<i>I have been loved.</i>
	amat-us es <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>thou hast been loved.</i>
	amat-us est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he hath been loved.</i>
Plur.	Amat-i sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus,	<i>We have been loved.</i>
	amat-i estis <i>v.</i> fuístis,	<i>ye have been loved.</i>
	amat-i sunt, fuerunt <i>v.-ére</i> ,	<i>they have been loved.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Amát-us eram <i>v.</i> fueram,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
	amat-us eras <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>thou hadst been loved.</i>
	amat-us erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>he had been loved.</i>
Plur.	Amat-i erámus <i>v.</i> fuerámus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
	amat-i eráti <i>v.</i> fueráti,	<i>ye had been loved.</i>
	amat-i erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

5. Future

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will be.*

Sing.	Am-ábor, am-aberis v. am-abere,	<i>I shall or will be loved.</i> <i>thou shalt or wilt be loved.</i>
	am-abitur,	<i>he shall or will be loved.</i>
Plur.	Am-abimur, am-abimini, am-abúntur,	<i>We shall or will be loved.</i> <i>ye shall or will be loved.</i> <i>they shall or will be loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Am-áre, am-átor, am-étur, am-átor,	<i>Be thou loved.</i> <i>let him be loved.</i>
Plur.	Am-émur, am-amini, am-aminor, am-éntur, am-ántor,	<i>Let us be loved.</i> <i>be ye loved.</i> <i>let them be loved.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should, be.*

Sing.	Am-er, am-éris v. am-ére,	<i>I may or can be loved.</i> <i>thou mayst or canst be loved.</i>
	am-étur,	<i>he may or can be loved.</i>
Plur.	Am-émur, am-émini, am-éntur,	<i>We may or can be loved.</i> <i>ye may or can be loved.</i> <i>they may or can be loved.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should, be.*

Sing.	Am-árer, am-aréris v. am-arére,	<i>I might or could be loved.</i> <i>thou mightst or couldst be loved.</i>
	am-áretur,	<i>he might or could be loved.</i>
Plur.	Am-arémur, am-arémini, am-aréntur,	<i>We might or could be loved.</i> <i>ye might or could be loved.</i> <i>they might or could be loved.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should, have been.*

Sing.	Amát-us sim v. fuerim, amat-us sis v. fueris, amat-us sit v. fuerit,	<i>I should have been loved.</i> <i>thou shouldst have been loved.</i> <i>he should have been loved.</i>
	Plur.	

Plur. Amát-i simus *v.* fuerimus, *We should have been loved.*
 amat-i sitis *v.* fueritis, *ye should have been loved.*
 amat-i sint *v.* fuerint, *they should have been loved.*

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would, have been.*

Sing. Amát-us essem *v.* fuisse, *I would have been loved.*
 amat-us esse *v.* fuisses, *thou wouldst have been loved.*
 amat-us esset *v.* fuisset, *he would have been loved.*

Plur. Amat-i essémus *v.* fuissémus, *We would have been loved.*
 amat-i essétis *v.* fuissétis, *ye would have been loved.*
 amat-i essent *v.* fuissent, *they would have been loved.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing. Amát-us ero *v.* fero, *I shall have been loved.*
 amat-us eris *v.* fueris, *thou shalt have been loved.*
 amat-us erit *v.* fuerit, *he shall have been loved.*

Plur. Amat-i erimus *v.* fuerimus, *We shall have been loved.*
 amat-i eritis *v.* fueritis, *ye shall have been loved.*
 amat-i erunt *v.* fuerint, *they shall have been loved.*

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Am-ári, *to be loved.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Amát-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been loved.*

Future Tense.

Amát-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense.

Amát-us, *loved or being loved*

The Future in *dus.*

Aman-dus, *to be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Mon-eor, mon-éris <i>vel</i> mon-ére, mon-étur,	<i>I am advised.</i> <i>thou art advised.</i> <i>he is advised.</i>
Plur.	Mon-émur, mon-émuni, mon-éntur,	<i>We are advised.</i> <i>ye are advised.</i> <i>they are advised.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing.	Mon-ébar, mon-ebáris <i>v.</i> mon-ebáre, mon-ebátur,	<i>I was advised.</i> <i>thou wast advised.</i> <i>he was advised.</i>
Plur.	Mon-ebámur, mon-ebámini, mon-ebántur,	<i>We were advised.</i> <i>ye were advised.</i> <i>they were advised.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing.	Monit-us sum <i>v.</i> fui, monit-us es <i>v.</i> fuisti, monit-us est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>I have been advised.</i> <i>thou hast been advised.</i> <i>he hath been advised.</i>
Plur.	Monit-i sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus, monit-i estis <i>v.</i> fuistis, monit-i sunt, fuérunt <i>v.</i> fuére,	<i>We have been advised.</i> <i>ye have been advised.</i> <i>they have been advised.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Monit-us eram <i>v.</i> fueram, monit-us eras <i>v.</i> fueras, monit-us erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>I had been advised.</i> <i>thou hadst been advised.</i> <i>he had been advised.</i>
Plur.	Monit-i erámus <i>v.</i> fuerámus, monit-i erátis <i>v.</i> fuerátis, monit-i erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>We had been advised.</i> <i>ye had been advised.</i> <i>they had been advised.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Mon-ébor, mon-eberis <i>v.</i> mon-ebere, mon-ebitur,	<i>I shall or will be advised.</i> <i>thou shalt or wilt be advised.</i> <i>he shall or will be advised.</i>
		<i>Plur.</i>

Plur. Mon-ebimur,	<i>We shall or will be advised.</i>
mon-ebimini,	<i>ye shall or will be advised.</i>
mon-ebuntur,	<i>they shall or will be advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. Mon-ére, mon-étor,	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
mon-éatur, mon-étor,	<i>let him be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-éamur,	<i>Let us be advised.</i>
mon-émini, mon-eminor,	<i>be ye advised.</i>
mon-éantur, mon-éntor,	<i>let them be advised.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should, be.*

Sing. Mon-ear,	<i>I may or can be advised.</i>
mon-éaris v. mon-éare,	<i>thou mayst or canst be advised.</i>
mon-éatur,	<i>he may or can be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-éamur,	<i>We may or can be advised.</i>
mon-éamini,	<i>ye may or can be advised.</i>
mon-éantur,	<i>they may or can be advised.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should, be.*

Sing. Mon-érer,	<i>I might or could be advised.</i>
mon-eréris v. mon-érére,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be advised.</i>
mon-erétur,	<i>he might or could be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-erémur,	<i>We might or could be advised.</i>
mon-erémini,	<i>ye might or could be advised.</i>
mon-eréntur,	<i>they might or could be advised.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should, have been.*

Sing. Monit-us sim v. fuerim,	<i>I should have been advised.</i>
monit-us sis v. fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been advised.</i>
monit-us sit v. fuerit,	<i>he should have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monit-isimus v. fuerimus,	<i>We should have been advised.</i>
monit-i sitis v. fueritis,	<i>ye should have been advised.</i>
monit-i sint v. fuerint,	<i>they should have been advised.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would, have been.*

Sing. Monit-us essem v. fuisse,	<i>I would have been advised.</i>
monit-us esses v. fuisse,	<i>thou wouldst have been advised.</i>
monit-us esset v. fuisse,	<i>he would have been advised.</i>

Plur. **Monit-i essémus** *v. fuissémus*, *We would have been advised.*
monit-i essétis *v. fuissétis*, *ye would have been advised.*
monit-i essent *v. fuissent*, *they would have been advised.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing. **Monit-us ero** *v. fuero*, *I shall have been advised.*
monit-us eris *v. fueris*, *thou shalt have been advised.*
monit-us erit *v. fuerit*, *he shall have been advised.*

Plur. **Monit-i erimus** *v. fuerimus*, *We shall have been advised.*
monit-i eritis *v. fueritis*, *ye shall have been advised.*
monit-i erunt *v. fuerint*, *they shall have been advised.*

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Monéri, *to be advised.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Monit-um esse vel fuisse, *to have been advised.*

Future Tense.

Monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense.

Monit-us, *advised or being advised.*

The Future in *dus*.

Monén-dus, *to be advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—*Regor.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. **Reg-or**, *I am ruled.*
reg-eris *v. reg-ere*, *thou art ruled.*
reg-itur, *he is ruled.*

Plur. **Reg-imur**, *We are ruled.*
reg-imini, *ye are ruled.*
reg-úntur, *they are ruled.*

2. Preter-

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing.	Reg-ébar,	<i>I was ruled.</i>
	reg-ebáris v. reg-ebáre,	<i>thou wast ruled.</i>
	reg-ebátur,	<i>he was ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-ebámur,	<i>We were ruled.</i>
	reg-ebámini,	<i>ye were ruled.</i>
	reg-ebántur,	<i>they were ruled.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us sum v. fui,	<i>I have been ruled.</i>
	rec-tus es v. fuisti,	<i>thou hast been ruled.</i>
	rect-us est v. fuit,	<i>he hath been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i sumus v. fuimus,	<i>We have been ruled.</i>
	rect-i estis v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been ruled.</i>
	rect-i sunt, fuérunt v. fuére,	<i>they have been ruled.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Rect-us eram v. fueram,	<i>I had been ruled.</i>
	rect-us eras v. fueras,	<i>thou hadst been ruled.</i>
	rect-us erat v. fuerat,	<i>he had been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i erámus v. fuerámus,	<i>We had been ruled.</i>
	rect-i erátis v. fuerátis,	<i>ye had been ruled.</i>
	rect-i erant v. fuerant,	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar,	<i>I shall or will be ruled.</i>
	reg-éris v. reg-ére,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be ruled.</i>
	reg-étur,	<i>he shall or will be ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-émur,	<i>We shall or will be ruled.</i>
	reg-émini,	<i>ye shall or will be ruled.</i>
	reg-entur,	<i>they shall or will be ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Reg-ere, reg-itor,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
	reg-átor, reg-itor,	<i>let him be ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-ámur,	<i>Let us be ruled.</i>
	reg-ímini, reg-íminor,	<i>be ye ruled.</i>
	reg-ántur, reg-ántor,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should, be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar, reg-áris <i>v.</i> reg-áre, reg-átur,	<i>I may or can be ruled.</i> <i>thou mayst or canst be ruled.</i> <i>he may or can be ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-ámur, reg-ámini, reg-ántur,	<i>We may or can be ruled.</i> <i>ye may or can be ruled.</i> <i>they may or can be ruled.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should, be.*

Sing.	Reg-erer, reg-eréis <i>v.</i> reg-erére, rég-erétur,	<i>I might or could be ruled.</i> <i>thou mightst or couldst be ruled.</i> <i>he might or could be ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-erémur, reg-erémini, reg-eréntur,	<i>We might or could be ruled.</i> <i>ye might or could be ruled.</i> <i>they might or could be ruled.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should, have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us sim <i>v.</i> fuerim, rect-us sis <i>v.</i> fueris, rect-us sit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>I should have been ruled.</i> <i>thou shouldst have been ruled.</i> <i>he should have been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus, rect-i sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis, rect-i sint <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>We should have been ruled.</i> <i>ye should have been ruled.</i> <i>they should have been ruled.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would, have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us essem <i>v.</i> fuisse, rect-us esses <i>v.</i> fuisse, rect-us esset <i>v.</i> fuisse,	<i>I would have been ruled.</i> <i>thou wouldst have been ruled.</i> <i>he would have been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i essémus <i>v.</i> fuissémus, rect-i essétis <i>v.</i> fuissétis, rect-i essent <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>We would have been ruled.</i> <i>ye would have been ruled.</i> <i>they would have been ruled.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us ero <i>v.</i> fuero, rect-us eris <i>v.</i> fueris, rect-us erit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i> <i>thou shalt have been ruled.</i> <i>he shall have been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus, rect-i eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis, rect-i erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i> <i>ye shall have been ruled.</i> <i>they shall have been ruled.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Reg-i, *to be ruled.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Rect-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense.

Rect-us, *ruled or being ruled.*The Future in *dus.*Regén-dus, *to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Aud-iōr, aud-iris <i>v.</i> aud-īre, aud-ītūr,	<i>I am heard.</i> <i>thou art heard.</i> <i>he is heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-īmūr, aud-īmīni, aud-īántur,	<i>We are heard.</i> <i>ye are heard.</i> <i>they are heard.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing.	Aud-iébar, aud-iebáris <i>v.</i> aud-iebáre, aud-iebátur,	<i>I was heard.</i> <i>thou wast heard.</i> <i>he was heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-iebámūr, aud-iebámīni, aud-iebántur,	<i>We were heard.</i> <i>ye were heard.</i> <i>they were heard.</i>

3. Preterperfect.

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing.	Audit-us sum <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been heard.</i>
	audit-us es <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>thou hast been heard.</i>
	audit-us est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he hath been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audit-i sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus,	<i>We have been heard.</i>
	audit-i estis <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been heard.</i>
	audit-i sunt, fuéruntv. <i>fuére,</i>	<i>they have been heard.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Audit-us eram <i>v.</i> fueram,	<i>I had been heard.</i>
	audit-us eras <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>thou hadst been heard.</i>
	audit-us erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>he had been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audit-i erámusv. <i>fuerámus,</i>	<i>We had been heard.</i>
	audit-i erátis <i>v.</i> fuerátis,	<i>ye had been heard.</i>
	audit-i erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	<i>I shall or will be heard.</i>
	aud-iéris <i>v.</i> aud-iére,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be heard.</i>
	aud-iétur,	<i>he shall or will be heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-iémur,	<i>We shall or will be heard.</i>
	aud-iémini,	<i>ye shall or will be heard.</i>
	aud-iéntur,	<i>they shall or will be heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Aud-iére, aud-itóre,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
	aud-iátur, aud-itóre,	<i>let him be heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-iámur,	<i>Let us be heard.</i>
	aud-iámini, aud-iáminor,	<i>be ye heard.</i>
	aud-iántur, aud-iántor,	<i>let them be heard.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should, be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	<i>I may or can be heard.</i>
	aud-iáris <i>v.</i> aud-iáre,	<i>thou mayest or canst be heard.</i>
	aud-iátur,	<i>he may or can be heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-iámur,	<i>We may or can be heard.</i>
	aud-iámini,	<i>ye may or can be heard.</i>
	aud-iántur,	<i>they may or can be heard.</i>

2. Preter-

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should, be.*

Sing.	Aud-írer,	<i>I might or could be heard.</i>
	aud-iréris <i>v.</i> aud-irére,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be heard.</i>
	aud-irétur,	<i>he might or could be heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-irémur,	<i>We might or could be heard.</i>
	aud-irémíni,	<i>ye might or could be heard.</i>
	aud-iréntur,	<i>they might or could be heard.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should, have been.*

Sing.	Audít-us sim <i>v.</i> fuerim,	<i>I should have been heard.</i>
	audit-us sis <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been heard,</i>
	audit-us sit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he should have been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audit-i simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We should have been heard.</i>
	audit-i sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye should have been heard.</i>
	audit-i sint <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they should have been heard.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could, have been.*

Sing.	Audit-us essem <i>v.</i> fuísem,	<i>I would have been heard.</i>
	audit-us esses <i>v.</i> fuisses,	<i>thou wouldst have been heard.</i>
	audit-us esset <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>he would have been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audit-i essémus <i>v.</i> fuísemus,	<i>We would have been heard.</i>
	audit-i essétis <i>v.</i> fuissetis,	<i>ye would have been heard.</i>
	audit-i essent <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing.	Audit-us ero <i>v.</i> fuero,	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
	audit-us eris <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been heard.</i>
	audit-us erit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he shall have been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audit-i erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been heard.</i>
	audit-i eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been heard.</i>
	audit-i erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they shall have been heard.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Aud-íri, *to be heard.*
Preterperfect

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Audit-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been heard.*

Future Tense.

Audít-um iri, *to be about to be heard.*PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense.

Audit-us, *heard or being heard.*The Future in *dus.*Audién-dus, *to be heard.*DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

CERTAIN Verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following;

1. Possum, potes, potui, posse; potens: *to be able.*
2. Volo, vis, volui, velle; voléndi, voléndo, volén-dum; volens: *to be willing.*
3. Nolo, nonvis, nolui, nolle; noléndi, noléndo, no-léndum; nolens: *to be unwilling.*
4. Malo, mavis, malui, malle; maléndi, maléndo, ma-léndum; malens: *to be more willing, or to have rather.*
5. Edo, edis, *vel* es, edi, edére, *vel* esse; edéndi, edén-do, edéndum; esum, esu; edens, esúrus: *to eat.*
6. Fero, fers, tuli, ferre; feréndi, feréndo, feréndum; latum, latu; ferens, latúrus: *to bear or suffer.*
7. Fio, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fiéri; factus, facién-dus: *to be made or done.*
8. Feror, ferris *vel* ferre, latus sum *vel* fui, ferri; latus, feréndus: *to be borne or suffered.*

INDIC.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Possum,	potes,	potest,
Volo,	vis,	vult,
Nolo,	nonvis,	nonvult,
Malo,	mavis,	mavult,
Edo,	edis v. es,	editv. est,
Fero;	fers,	fert,
Fio,	fis,	fit,
Feror,	ferrisv.	ferre,
	feretur,	ferimus,
		feritis,
		ferunt.

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*I was able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Pot-eram,	eras,	erat,
Vole-bam,		erámus,
Nolé-bam,		erátis,
Malé-bam,		erant.
Edé-bam,	bas;	erámus,
Feré-bam,	bat,	erátis,
Fié-bam,		bant.
Feré-bar,	báris v. báre,	bátur,
	bámur,	bamini,
		bántur.

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*I have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Potu-i,		
Volu-i,		
Nolu-i,	isti,	it,
Malu-i,		imus,
Ed-i,		istis;
Tul-i,		érunt vel ere.
Factus,	sum,	est,
	v.	v.
	isti;	v.
	fui;	fuit;
		fuimus;
		fuistis;
		fuére.

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*I had been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>				
Potu-eram,					
Volu-eram,					
Nolu-eram,					
Malu-eram,	eras,	erat,	erámus,	erátis,	erant.
Ed-eram,					
Tul-eram,					
Fact-us,	eram, v.	eras, v.	erat, v.	erámus v.	erátis v.
Lat-us,	fu-eram; -eras;	-erat;	fuerámus;	fuerátis;	fuerant.

5. Future Tense.—*I shall or will be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>				
Pot-ero,	eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erunt.
Vol-am,					
Nol-am,					
Mal-am,	es,	et,	émus,	étis,	ent.
Ed-am,					
Fer-am,					
Fi-am,					
Fer-ar,	éris v. ére,	étur,	émur,	émini,	éntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, malo*, have no Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—*be thou unwilling, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>				
Noli, nolito,					nolite, nolitóte.
Ede, edito, vel Es, esto;	edámus;	edite, editóte, vel Este,			
edat, edito vel esto,			[estóte; ed-ant, -ánto.		
Fer, ferto; ferat, ferto,	ferámus;	ferte, fertóte, fer-ant, -ánto.			
Fi, fito; fiat, fito,	fiámus;	fite, fitóte;			
Fer-re,-tor; fer-átur,-tor,	ferámur;	ferimin-i,-or; ant			

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I may be able, &c.*

Singular.	Plural.			
Poss-im,				
Vel-im,	is,	it,	ímus,	ítis,
Nol-im,				int.
Mal-im,				
Ed-am,				
Fer-am,	as,	at,	ámus,	átis,
Fi-am,				ant.
Fer-ar, áris v. áre,		átur,	ámur,	ámini,
				ántur,

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*I might be able, &c.*

Singular.	Plural.			
Poss-em,				
Vell-em,				
Noll-em,				
Mall-em,				
Eder-em,	es,	et,	émus,	étis,
vel.				ent.
Ess-em,				
Ferr-em,				
Fier-em,				
Ferr-er, éris v. ére,		étur,	émur,	émini,
				éntur.

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*I should have been able, &c.*

Singular.	Plural.			
Potu-erim,				
Volu-erim,				
Nolu-erim,	eris, erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erint,
Malu-erim,				
Ed-erim,				
Tul-erim,				
Fact-us,	sim, sis, sit,	i simus, sitis,	sint,	
v.	v.	v.	v.	
fue-rim;	-ris;	-rit;	fuerimus;	fueritis;
				fuerint.

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*I might have been able, &c.*

Singular.	Plural.
Potu-issem,	
Volu-issem,	
Nolu-issem,	
Malu-issem,	
Ed-issem,	
Tul-issem,	
Fact-us, } essem, esses,	isset, issémus, issétis, issent.
} v. v.	v. v. v. v.
Lat-us, } fu-issem; -isses ;-essem,	fuissémus; fuissétis; fuissent.

5. Future Tense.—*I shall have been able, &c.*

Singular.	Plural.
Potu-ero,	
Volu-ero,	
Nolu-ero,	
Malu-ero,	
Ed-ero,	
Tul-ero,	
Fact-us, } ero, eris, erit, i erimus, eritis, erunt,	
} v. v. v. v. v. v.	
Lat-us, } fue-ro; -ris; -rit; fuerimus; fueritis; fuerint.	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.—*to be able, &c.*

Posse.	Edere vel esse.
Velle.	Ferre.
Nolle.	Fieri.
Malle.	Ferri.

Preterper. and Preterpluper. Tense.—*to have been able, &c.*

Potuisse.	Edisse.
Voluisse.	Tulisse.
Noluisse.	Factum esse vel fuisse.
Maluisse.	Latum esse vel fuisse.

Future Tense.—*to be about to eat, &c.*

Esúrum esse.	Factum iri.
Latúrum esse.	Latum iri.

Obs. Possum, volo, nolo, malo, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood.

EO, to go, is also a verb irregular.

Eo, is, ivi, ire, itum, iens, iturus.

Indic. Mood. } *Sing.* Eo, is, it. *Plur.* Imus, itis, eunt. *Pres. T.* }

Preterimperf. } *Sing.* Ibam, ibas, ibat. *Pl.* Ibamus, ibatis, *Tense.* } *ibant.*

Future Tense. *Sing.* Ibo, ibis, ibit. *Pl.* Ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Imperat. M. *Sing.* I, ito; eat, ito. *Pl.* Eamus; ite, *itote; eant, eunto.*

Potent. M. *Sing.* Eam, eas, eat. *Pl.* Eamus, eatis, eant.

Gerunds. Eundi, eundo, eundum.

Participle Pres. Tens. Iens, gen. euntis.

In all other moods and tenses *Eo* is declined like *audio*.

Obs. In like manner are the compounds of *Eo* declined; also *queo*, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable, except that these two last have no imperative mood or gerunds.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

VERBS are called *defective**, that have only some particular Tenses and Persons; as

Aio, I say.

Indic. Mood, Pres. Tense, Sing. Aio, ais, ait. *Pl.* Aiunt.

Preterimp. T. Sing. Aié-bam, bas, bat.

Plur. Aie-bamus, batis, bant.

* 1. *Apage*, away with, has *apagite*.

2. *For*, to speak, and *dor*, to be given, with its potential *der*, are not used. *Sci*, the imperative of *scio*, is obsolete. *Dic*, *duc*, *fac*, are used by apocope for *dice*, *duce*, *face*.

3. *Facio* takes *fi*, for its passive instead of *factor*, which is not in use. The compounds, however, of *facio*, when they change the *a* into *i*, are regular, both in the imperative active, and in the passive voice, as *inficio* makes *infactor*.

Preterperf. T. Sing. Aisti, Plur. Aistis.

Imperative Mood, Sing. Ai.

Potent. M. Pres. T. Sing. Aias, aiat. Pl. Aiámus, aiant.

Participle Pres. Tense. Aiens.

Ausim, I dare.

Indic. or Potent. M. Sing. Ausim, ausis, ausit.

Pl. Ausint.

Ave, Hail!

Imperative M. Sing. Ave, avéto. Pl. Avéte, avetóte.

Infinitive M. Avére.

Salve, God save you!

Indicat. M. Future T. Sing. Salvébis.

Imperat. M. Sing. Salve, salvéto. Pl. Salvéte, salvetóte.

Infin. M. Salvére.

Cedo, Give me.

Imperat. M. Sing. Cedo. Pl. Cedite.

Faxo or Faxim, I will or may do it; pro Faciam, &c.

Indic. Fut. or Pot. M. Sing. Faxo vel faxim, faxis, faxit. Pl. Faximus, faxitis, faxint.

Quæso, I pray.

Indic. M. Pres. T. Sing. Quæso, quæsis, quæsit.

Pl. Quæsumus.

Infin. M. Quæsere. Participle, Quæsens.

Inquio or Inquam, I say.

Indic. M. Pres. T. Sing. Inquio vel in-quam,-quis,-quit.

Pl. Inquimus, inquiunt.

Preterimp. T. Sing. Inquiébat. Pl. Inquiébant.

Preterp. T. Sing. Inquisti.

Future T. Sing. Inquies, inquiet.

Imperat. Mood, Sing. Inque, inquiat vel inquito.

Participle, Inquiens.

Memini, I remember.

Imperat. Mood, Sing. Memento. Pl. Mementóte.

Cœpi, I begin.

Indic. M. Preterperf. T. Sing. Cœpi, cœpisti.

Odi, I hate.

Indic. M. Preterperf. T. Sing. Odi, odisti, odit.

Pl. Odérunt.

Novi, I know; and Memini, I remember. Then ~~versus~~ ^{versus}

verbs have the tenses only that are formed from the preterperfect tense of the indicative mood ; as of

Memin-i are formed *memin-eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse.*

In like manner do *cæpi* and *odi* also form these tenses.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

VERBS when expressed in general, and in English take the word *It* before them, are called *Impersonals** ; as

It delighteth, delectat, delectábat, delectávit, &c.

It becometh, decet, decebat, decuit, &c.

It is fought, pugnátur, pugnabátur, pugnátum est, &c.

It seemeth, vidétur, videbátur, vidébitur, visum est, &c.

OF A PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE† is a part of speech derived from a verb, and taketh part of a noun ; as number, gender, case, and declension : and part of a verb ; as tense and signification.

There are four kinds of PARTICIPLES.

1. One of the Present Tense, which in English ends in *ing*, and in Latin in *ans* or *ens* ; as *loving*, *amans* ; *teaching*, *docens*.

* 1. Impersonals are declined through all moods and tenses in the third person singular only ; some, however, are defective and irregular. *Confit*, it is done ; and *infit*, he begins, have only the present : *defit*, and *ovat* are also defective. Some are irregular, as *libet*, which makes *libuit*, and *libitum est vel fuit* ; *licet*, *licuit*, *licitum*, &c.

2. Several verbs which are regular in the *active*, are used impersonally *passive*.

† 1. Verbs deponent, which have an active signification with a passive termination, have the four participles : as *loquor*, to speak, makes *loquens*, speaking ; *locutárus*, about to speak ; *locútus*, having spoken ; *loquéndus*, to be spoken. They are declined also with gerunds and supines like the active verbs.

2. Participles of the present tense are declined like the third declension of adjectives ; the other three participles are declined like *bonus*.

2. One

2. One of the Future in *rus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing a thing; as *amatūrus*, to love, or about to love.

3. One of the Preterperfect Tense, which has generally a passive signification, and in English ends in *d*, *t*, or *n*; as *lectus*, read; *doctus*, taught; *visus*, seen.

4. One of the Future in *dus*, which also has a passive signification, and expresses a future action; as *amandus*, to be loved.

Note, All participles are declined like nouns adjective.

OF AN ADVERB.

AN ADVERB* is a part of speech joined to verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to increase or diminish their signification: as, he speaks *well*; they write *badly*.

OF A CONJUNCTION.

A CONJUNCTION† is a part of speech that joineth words and sentences together: as, my father *and* my mother.

OF A PREPOSITION.

A PREPOSITION‡ is a part of speech most commonly set before another word; as, *ad dextram*, on

* Some adverbs, especially those derived from adjectives, admit of comparison; as *doctè*, *doctiùs*, *doctissimè*; *bene*, *melius*, *optime*; *sæpe*, *sæpius*, *sæpissime*; *diu*, *diutius*, *diutissime*; and many others.

† Though conjunctions in general may be considered as joining words and sentences together, they are likewise employed to show the manner of their dependence; as *venit ut me liberaret*, he came to set me free.

‡ 1. Some prepositions are joined to certain nouns, verbs, and adverbs, in composition; as *prælectio*, *subscribo*, *perbreviter*.

2. These five, *am*, *con*, *dis*, *re*, *se*, are called inseparable prepositions, being used in composition only.

the

the right hand: or else is joined in composition: as *in-doctus*, unlearned.

These Prepositions have an Accusative case after them.

<i>Ad</i> , to or at.	<i>Penēs</i> , in the power of.
<i>Adversūm</i> , <i>adversūs</i> , against.	<i>Per</i> , by or through.
<i>Ante</i> , before.	<i>Ponē</i> , behind.
<i>Apud</i> , at, or near.	<i>Post</i> , after or since.
<i>Circa</i> , <i>Circum</i> , <i>Circiter</i> , about.	<i>Præter</i> , beside or except.
<i>Cis</i> , <i>Citra</i> , on this side.	<i>Prope</i> , nigh or near to.
<i>Contra</i> , against.	<i>Propter</i> , for or because of.
<i>Erga</i> , toward.	<i>Secundūm</i> , according to.
<i>Extra</i> , without.	<i>Secus</i> , by or along.
<i>Infra</i> , beneath.	<i>Supra</i> , above.
<i>Inter</i> , between or among.	<i>Trans</i> , on the further side.
<i>Intra</i> , within.	<i>Versūs</i> , toward.
<i>Juxta</i> , beside or nigh to.	<i>Ultra</i> , beyond.
<i>Ob</i> , for or because of.	<i>Usque</i> , until.

Obs. *Versūs* is set after its case, as *Londinum versūs*, towards London.

Likewise *penēs* and *usque* may be so placed.

The Prepositions following have an Ablative case after them.

<i>A</i> , <i>Ab</i> , <i>Abs</i> , from or by.	<i>Palam</i> , openly.
<i>Absque</i> , without.	<i>Præ</i> , before or in com-
<i>Coram</i> , before or in presence of.	parison of.
<i>Cum</i> , with.	<i>Pro</i> , for.
<i>De</i> , of or from.	<i>Sine</i> , without.
<i>E</i> , <i>Ex</i> , of, from, or out of.	<i>Tenus</i> , up to or as far as.

Obs. *Tenus* is set after its case; as *portā tenus*, as far as the gate; and in the plural number the noun is commonly put in the genitive case; as *aurium tenus*, up to the ears.

The Prepositions following serve to both cases:

Clam, unknown to; as *clam patrem*, or *patre*, without my father's knowledge.

In for *into*, signifying motion, has an Accusative case; as *eo in urbem*, I go into the city.

In, for *in* only, serves to the Ablative case; as *in te spes est*, my hope is in thee.

Sub: as *sub noctem*, a little before night.

sub judice lis est, the matter is before the judge.

Subter: as *subter terram*, under the earth.

subter aqua, under the water.

Super: as *super lapidem*, upon a stone.

super viridi fronde, upon a green bough.

OF AN INTERJECTION.

AN INTERJECTION* is a part of speech which betokeneth a sudden motion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or other passion.

THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three Concords or Agreements in Latin.

1. Between the nominative case and the verb.
2. Between the substantive and the adjective.
3. Between the antecedent and the relative.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

A Verb agreeeth with its nominative case, in number and person.

In order to find out the nominative case, ask the question *who?* or *what?* with the verb; and the word

* Interjections expressing the milder emotions of the mind, or passions *without violence*, very nearly approach to the nature of adverbs.

that

that answereth to the question is the nominative case to the verb ; as *who reads?* *who regards not?*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not,
**Præceptor* ^b*legit*, **vos* *verò* ^b*negligitis*.

Sometimes an infinitive mood, or a sentence, is the nominative case to a verb ; and sometimes the substantive to an adjective ; and sometimes the antecedent to a relative : and in this case the adjective and the relative must be in the neuter gender; as,

Diluculo ^a*surgere saluberrimum* ^b*est*.

To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

**In tempore* *veni*, ^b*quod omnium* *est primum*.

I came in season, which is the chief thing of all.

Many nominative cases singular have a verb plural, which agrees with the nominative case of the most worthy person. *And note*, That the first person is more worthy than the second, and the second more worthy than the third ; as,

**Ego et* ^b*tu* ^c*sumus in tuto*.

I and thou are in safety.

The substantive which cometh next after the verb, and answereth to the question *whom* or *what*, made by the verb, shall commonly be the accusative case ; except the verb, by some particular rule, requires another case after it ; as,

Si cupis ^a*placere* ^b*magistro*, ^a*utere* ^b*diligentia*.

If you desire to please the master, use diligence.

Obs. In this example *magistro* is the dative, and *diligentia* the ablative case, according to rule.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

WHEN you have an adjective, ask this question, *who?* or *what?* with the adjective, and the word that answereth to the question shall be the substantive to the adjective.

The adjective, whether it be a noun, pronoun, or
 participle

participle, agreeth with its substantive in case, gender, and number ; as,

**Amicus ^bcertus in ^are ^bincertâ cernitur.*

A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

Obs. 1. The masculine gender is more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy than the neuter. *Also note*, that in things without life, the neuter gender is most worthy ; and in this case, though the substantive or antecedent be of the masculine or feminine gender, and not of the neuter, yet may the adjective or relative be put in the neuter ; as,

**Arcus et ^aculami sunt ^bbona.*

The bow and arrows are good.

**Arcus et ^acalami ^bquæ fregisti.*

The bow and arrows which thou hast broken.

Obs. 2. Many substantives singular will have an adjective plural, which adjective shall agree with the substantive of the most worthy gender ; as,

**Rex et ^aregina ^bbeati.*

The king and the queen are blessed.

Also, When in English the word *thing* is put with an adjective, you may in Latin leave out the substantive, and put the adjective in the neuter gender ; as,

Multa me impedierunt.

Many *things* have hindered me.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

WHEN you have a relative, ask this question, *who* ? or *what* ? with the verb, and the word that answereth to the question shall be the antecedent to the relative.

The relative agreeth with its antecedent in gender, number, and person ; as

**Vir sapit, ^bqui pauca loquitur.*

The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

Obs.

Obs. 1. If the relative refers to two antecedents, or more, then it shall be put in the plural number; as,

*Tu multūm *dormis, et sape *potas; ^bquæ ^bambo sunt corpori inimica.*

Thou sleepest much, and drinkest often; *both which* things are naught for the body.

Obs. 2. When the English word *that* may be turned into *who* or *which*, it is a relative: otherwise it is a conjunction, expressed in Latin by *quod* or *ut*; and in making Latin, the conjunction may be put away, by turning the nominative case to the verb into the accusative, and the verb into the infinitive mood; as, *Gaudeo quod tu bene vales*; or, *gaudeo te bene valere*. I am glad *that* thou art in good health.

A PARADIGM, or general TABLE of VERBS, throughout the several Moods and Tenses, by which all Verbs Regular are formed, according to their respective Conjugations.

1. The ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense; *do, am.*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Conjug.</i> 1. o,	as,	at.	ámus,	átis,	ant.
2. eo,	es,	et.	émus,	étis,	ent.
3. o,	is,	it.	ímus,	ítis,	unt.
4. io,	is,	it.	ímus,	ítis,	iunt.

Preterimperfect Tense; *did, was.*

<i>Conjug.</i> 1.	ábam, ábas, ábat.	abámus, abátis, ábant.
2.	ébam, ébas, ébat.	ebámus, ebátis, ébant.
3.	iébam, iébas, iébat.	iebámus, iebátis, iébant.

Preterperfect Tense; *have**

<i>Conjug.</i> 1. 2. 3. 4. } i,	isti,	it.	ímus, istis, érunt, or ére.
---------------------------------	-------	-----	-----------------------------

* The several Terminations of this Tense are the same in the four Conjugations; and note, the Preterpluperfect Tense that next follows; and also other Tenses of the Potential and Infinitive Moods, are derived from this Preterperfect Tense, as is observed page 19.

Preterpluperfect Tense; *had*.

Conjug. 1. 2. 3. 4. } *eram*, *eras*, *erat*. } *erámus*, *erátiſ*, *erant*.

Future Tense; *shall or will*.

Conjug. 1. *ábo*, *ábis*, *ábit*. } *abimus*, *abitis*, *ábunt*.
 2. *ébo*, *ébis*, *ébit*. } *ebimus*, *ebitis*, *ébunt*.
 3. *am*, *es*, *et*. } *émus*, *étis*, *ent*.
 4. *iam*, *ies*, *iet*. } *íémus*, *íétis*, *ient*.

Imperative Mood; *let*.

Conjug. 1. *a*, *ato*; *et*, *áto*. } *émus*; *áte*, *atóte*; *ent*, *ánto*.
 2. *e*, *éto*; *eat*, *éto*. } *éamus*; *éte*, *etóte*; *eant*, *énto*.
 3. *e*, *ito*; *at*, *ito*. } *ámus*; *ítis*, *ant*, *tinto*.
 4. *i*, *ito*; *iat*, *ito*. } *íámus*; *ítis*, *itóte*, *iant*, *ínto*.

Potential or Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense; *may or can*.

Conjug. 1. *em*, *es*, *et*. } *émus*, *étis*, *ent*.
 2. *eam*, *eas*, *eat*. } *éamus*, *éatis*, *eant*.
 3. *am*, *as*, *at*. } *ámus*, *átis*, *ant*.
 4. *iam*, *ias*, *iat*. } *íámus*, *íatis*, *iant*.

Preterimperfect Tense; *might, could, should*.

Conjug. 1. *árem*, *áres*, *áret*. } *árémus*, *árétis*, *arent*.
 2. *érem*, *eres*, *éret*. } *érent*.
 3. *erem*, *eres*, *eret*. } *erent*.
 4. *írem*, *íres*, *íret*. } *írémus*, *íréatis*, *írent*.

Preterperfect Tense; *should have, may have*.

Conj. 1. 2. 3. 4. *erim*, *eris*, *erit*. } *erimus*, *eritis*, *erint*.

Preterpluperfect Tense; *would, might, could have*.

Conj. 1. 2. 3. 4. *isssem*, *isses*, *isset*. } *issémus*, *issétis*, *issent*.

Future Tense; *shall have*.

Conj. 1. 2. 3. 4. *ero*, *eris*, *erit*. } *erimus*, *eritis*, *erint*.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Preterimperf. 1. *áre*. 2. *ére*. 3. *ére*. 4. *íre*.

Preterp. and Preterplup. *isse*.

Future, rum esse vel fuisse.

Gerunds, di, do, dum.

Supines, um, u.

Participle of the Pres. Tense, 1. ans. 2. ens. 3. ens. 4. iens.

Participle future in rus, rus.

2. PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense ; *am.*

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. or ; áris or áre ; atur.	ámur,	amini,	ántur.
	2. eor; éris or ére ; étur.	émur,	emini,	éntur.
	3. or ; eris or ere ; itur.	imur,	imini,	úntur.
	4. ior; íris or íre ; itur.	imur,	imini,	íuntur.

Preterimperfect Tense ; *was.*

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. ábar; ábarisorabáre; abámar,	abámar,	abamini,	abántur.
	abátar.			
	2. 3. ébar; ebárisorebáre; ebámar,	ebámar,	ebamini,	ebántur.
	ebátar.			
	4. iébar; iebáris or iebámar,	iebámar,	iebamini,	iebántur.
	iebáre ; iebátar.			

Preterperfect Tense ; *have been.*

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. us sum or fui ; es or i sumus or fuimus ; i estis or			
1.2.3.4.	fuisti ; est or fuit.		fuistis ; i sunt, fuérunt, or	

fuére.

Preterpluperfect Tense ; *had been.*

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. us eram or fueram ; i erámus or fuerámus ; eráis			
1.2.3.4.	eras or fueras ; erat or fueratis ; erant or fuerant.			

Future Tense ; *shall or will be.*

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. ábor ; aberis or ab- abimur,	abimini,	abúntur.	
	ere ; ebitur.			
	2. ébor ; eberis or eb- ebimur,	ebimini,	ebúntur.	
	ere ; abitur.			
	3. ar ; éris or ére ; étur.	émur,	emini,	éntur.
	4. iar ; iéris or iére ; iétur.	imur,	imini,	iéntur.

Imperative Mood ; *let.*

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. áre, átor ; étur.	émur ; amini, aminor ; éntur,		
	átor.	ántor.		
	3. ére, étor ; éatur.	émur ; emini, eminor ; éntur,		
	étor.	éntor.		
	3. ere, itor : étur, itor.	ámur ; imini, iminor ; ántur,		
		úntor.		
	4. ire, itor ; iáatur.	íámur ; imini, iminor ; iántur,		
	iátor.	iuntor.		

Potential

Potential or Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense ; *may* or *can* be.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Conjug.</i>			
1. er ; éris or ére ; étur.	émur,	emini,	éntur.
2. ear ; eáris or eáre ;	eámur,	earmini,	eántur.
eátur.			
3. ar ; áris or áre ; átur.	ámur,	amini,	ántur.
4. iar ; iáris or iáre ;	iámur,	iamini,	iántur.
iatur.			

Preterimperfect Tense; *might, could, should be.*

Preterperfect Tense ; *may or should have been.*

Conj. 1.2.3.4. us sim or fuerim; i simus or fuerimus; sitis or sis or fueris; sit fueritis; sint or fuerint.
or fuerit.

Preterpluperfect Tense ; *would, might, could have been.*

Conj. 1.2.3.4. *us essem or fuisse* *i* *essémus or fuissémus; essésem; esses or fuisse; esset or fuissest.* *tis or fuissétis; essent or fuissent.*

Future Tense; *shall have been.*

Conj. 1.2.3.4. us ero or fuero; i erimus or fuerimus; eritis or eris or fueris; fueritis; erunt or fuerint. erit or fuerit.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Preterimperf. 1. ári. 2. éri. 3. i. 4. íri.

Preterperf. and *Preterpluperf.* um esse or fuisse.

Future, um iri or fore.

Participle of the Preterp. Tense, us. Future in dus, dus.

Note, *Verbs in io of the 3d Conj. form the pres. ind. and pot. the preterimp. and fut. ind. the imperat. (except the 2d p. sing.) and the gerunds, like verbs of the 4th. But in the 2d. p. sing. imperat. the preterimp. pot. and pres. infin. they are not so declined. Thus fodio makes fodiunt, 3d pers. pl. ind. fodiebam, &c. imp. ind. fodiendi, &c. gerunds, but fode 2nd sing. imperative, fode-re, &c. imp. potent, and fodere, pres. inf.*

OF THE

GENDERS OF NOUNS.

1. SUBSTANTIVES.

PROPER NAMES.

1. Masculine.

*PROPRIA, quæ maribus tribuuntur, mascula dicas ;
 Ut sunt Divorum ; Mars, Bacchus, Apollo : Virorum ;
 Ut, Cato, Virgilius : Fluviorum ; ut, Tibris, Orontes :
 Mensium ; ut, October : Ventorum ; ut, Libs, Notus,
 Auster.*

2. Feminine.

*PROPRIA fæmineum referentia nomina sexum,
 Fæmineo generi tribuuntur ; sive Dearum
 Sunt ; ut, Juno, Venus : Muliebria ; ut, Anna, Philotis :
 Urbium ; ut, Elis, Opus : Regionum ; ut, Græcia, Persis :
 Insulæ item nomen ; ceu, Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.*

*Excipienda tamen quædam sunt urbium ; ut ista
 Mascula ; Sulmo, Agragas : quædam neutralia ; ut, Argos,
 Tibur, Præneste : et genus Anxur quod dat utrumque.*

NOUNS APPELLATIVE.

1. Feminine Gender.

*APPELLATIVA Arborum erunt muliebria ; ut, alnus,
 Cupressus, cedrus. Mas spinus, mas oleaster :
 Et sunt neutra, siler, suber, thus, robur, acérque.*

2. Epicene Gender.

*SUNT etiam Volucrum ; ceu, passer, hirundo : Ferarum ;
 Ut, tigris, vulpes : et Piscium : ut, ostrea, cetus,
 Dicta epicæna ; quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.*

3. Neuter Gender.

*ATTAMEN ex cunctis suprà reliquísque notandum,
 Onus quod exit in um, seu Græcum sive Latinum,
 Esse genus neutrum ; sic invariabile nomen.*

THE FIRST SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS not increasing.

Feminine.

NOMEN non crescens genitivo ; *ceu*, caro carnis,
Capra capræ, nubes nubis ; *genus est muliebre*.

1. NOUNS Masculine excepted.

MASCULA nomina in a dicuntur multa virorum ;
Ut, scriba, assecla, scurra, *et* rabula, lixa, lanista.

Muscula, Græcorum quot declinatio prima
Fundit in as, *et in* es, *et ab illis* quot per a fiunt :
Ut, satrapas satrapa, athletes athleta. *Leguntur*
Mascula item, verres, natalis, aqualis : *Ab asse*
Nata ; *ut*, centussis : *conjunge* lienis, *et* orbis,
Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, *et* ensis,
Fustis, funis, cenchris, panis, crinis, *et* ignis ;
Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, *et* unguis,
Et vermis, vectis, postis ; *societur* *et* axis.

Mascula in er ; *ceu*, venter : in os, *vel* us ; *ut* legos,
annus.

Fæminei at generis sunt, mater, humus, domus, alvus,
Et colus, *et* quartæ pro fructu ficus, acusque,
Porticus atque tribus, socrus, nurus, *et* manus, idus ;
Huc anus addenda est, *huc* mystica vannus *Iacchi*.

His jungas or in us vertentia Græca ; papyrus,
Antidotus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,
Crystallus, synodus, sapphirus, eremus, *et* Arctus,
Cum multis aliis, *qua* ~~nu~~ perscribere longum est.

2. NOUNS Neuter excepted.

NEUTRUM nomen in e, si gignit is, *ut*, mare, retè ;
Et, quot in on, per i flexa legas ; *ut* barbiton, adde.
Et neutrum hippomanes genus, *et* neutrum cacoëthes,
Et virus, pelagus : *neutrum* modò, mas modò, vulgus.

3. NOUNS of the doubtful Gender excepted.

INCERTI generis sunt talpa, *et* dama, canalis,
Et cytisus, balanus, clunis, finis, penus, amnis,
Pampinus,

Pampinus, *et* corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,
Pro morbo ficus fici *dans*, *atque* phaselus,
 Lecythus, *ac* atomus, grossus, pharus, *et* paradisus.

4. NOUNS of the Common of two Genders excepted.

COMPOSITUM à *verbo* *dans* a, *commune duorum est* ;
Grajugena à *gigno*, *agricola* à *colo*, *id* *advena monstrant*
A verio : *Add* *senex*, *auriga*, *et* *verna*, *sodalis*,
Vates, *extorris*, *patruelis*, *perque* *duellis*,
Affinis, *juvenis*, *testis*, *civis*, *canis*, *hostis*.

THE SECOND SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS increasing long.

Feminine.

NOMEN, *crescentis penultima si genitivi*
Syllaba acuta sonat, *velut hæc*, *pietas*, *pietatis*,
Virtus, *virtutis*, *monstrant* ; *genus est muliebre*.

1. NOUNS Masculine excepted.

MASCULA *dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quædam* :
Sal, *sol*, *ren*, *et* *splen*, *Car*, *Ser*, *vir*, *vas* *vadis*, *as*, *mas*,
Bes, *Cres*, *præs*, *et* *pes*, *glis* *gliris* *habens genitivo* :
Mos, *flos*, *ros*, *et* *Tros*, *mus*, *dens*, *mons*, *pons*, *simul* *et*
fons,

Seps pro serpente, *gryps*, *Thrax*, *rex*, *grex* *gregis*, *et* *Phryx*.

Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in n ; *ut*, *Acarnan*,
Lichen, *et* *delphin* : *Et in o signantia corpus* ;
Ut, *leo*, *curculio* : *sic* *senio*, *ternio*, *sermo*.

Mascula in er, *or*, *et os* : *cœu* *crater*, *conditor*, *heros* :
His, *torrens*, *nefrens*, *oriens*, *conjunge* *cliénsque* :
Atque *bidens instrumentum*, *cum pluribus in dens* :
Adde *gigas*, *elephas*, *adamas*, *Garamásque*, *tapésque*,
Atque *lebes*, *sic et magnes*, *unūmque* *meridi-*
es nomen quintæ : *et quæ componantur ab asse*,
Ut *dodrans*, *semis* : *jungantur* *mascula* ; *Samnis*,
Hydrops, *et* *thorax* : *jungas quæque* *mascula* ; *vervex*,
Phoenix, *et* *bombyx* *pro* *vermiculo*. *Attamen ex his*
Sunt muliebre genus, *Siren*, *necnon*, *soror*, *uxor*.

2. NOUNS

2. NOUNS NEUTER excepted.

SUNT neutralia et hæc monosyllaba nomina; mel, fel, Lac, far, ver, æs, cor, vas vasis, os ossis, et oris, Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus. Et in al polysyllaba, in àrque, Ut, Capital, laquear. Neutrūm, al-ec, ex muliebre.

3. NOUNS of the Doubtful Gender excepted.

SUNT dubii generis, scrobs, serpens, bubo, rudens, grus, Perdix, lynx, limax, stirps pro truncō, pedis et calx: Adde dies, numero tantum mas esto secundo.

4. NOUNS of the Common of two Genders excepted.

SUNT commune, parens, auctórque, infans, adolescens, Dux, illex, hæres, exlex: à fronte creata; Ut, bifrons: custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos.

THE THIRD SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS increasing short.

Masculine.

*NOMEN, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Sit gravis, ut sanguis genitivo sanguinis, est mas.*

1. NOUNS Feminine excepted.

*FCEMINEI generis sit hyperdissyllabon in do,
Quod dinis, atque in go, quod dat giniſ, in genitivo.
Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis: idque
Monstrat, compago compaginis: adjice virgo,
Grando, fides, compes, teges, et seges, arbor, hyémsque;
Sic chlamys, et sindon, Gorgon, icon, et Amazon.
Græcula in as, vel in is, finita: ut, lampas, iaspis,
Cassis, cuspis; item mulier, pecus et pecudis dans:
His forfex, pellex, carex, simul atque supellex,
Appendix, hystrix, coxendix, adde filixque.*

2. NOUNS Neuter excepted.

*EST neutrale genus signans rem non animatam
Nomen in a, ut problema; en, ut omen; ar, ut jubar;
ur dans,
Ut jecur; us, ut onus; put, ut occiput. Attamen ex his
Mascula*

Mascula sunt, pecten, furfur. Sunt neutra, cadaver, Verber, iter, suber, pro fungo tuber, et uber, Gingiber, et laser, cicer, et piper, atque papayer, Et siser: his addas neutra, aequor, marmor, adorque; Atque pecus quando pecoris facit in genitivo.

3. NOUNS of the Doubtful Gender excepted.

SUNT dubii generis, cardo, margo, cinis, obex, Forceps, pumex, imbrex, cortex, pulvis, adépsque, Adde culex, natrix, et onyx cum prole, siléxque, Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula dicier usus.

4. NOUNS Common excepted.

COMMUNIS generis sunt ista; vigil, pugil, exul, Præsul, homo, nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, et Arcas; Antistes, miles, pedes, interpres, comes, hospes; Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obses; Atque alia à verbis quæ nomina multa creantur; Ut, conjux, judex, yndex, opifex, et aruspex.

II. ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVA unam duntaxat habentia vocem, Ut, felix, audax; retinent genus omne sub unda: Sub gemind si voce cadant, velut, omnis et omne, Vox commune diuīm prior est, vox altera neutrum: At si tres variant voces; sacer ut, sacra, sacrum; Vox prima est mas, altera fæmina, tertia neutrum.

Obs. 1. *At sunt quæ flexu propè substantiva vocares, Adjectiva tamen naturā usūque reperta: Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber, Et dives, locuples, sospes, comes, atque superstes: Cum paucis aliis, quæ lectio justa docebit.*

Obs. 2. *Hæc proprium quendam sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent;*

Campester, volucer, celeber, celer, atque saluber; Junge pedester, equester, et acer: junge paluster, Ac alacer, sylvester: At hæc tu sic variabis; Hic celer, hæc celeris, neutro hoc celere: Aut aliter sic, Hic atque hæc celeris, rursum hoc celere est tibi neutrum.

OF NOUNS HETEROCLITE; OR IRREGULAR.*

*Quæ genus aut flexum variant, quæcumque novato
Ritu deficiunt, superantve, HETEROCLITA sunt.*

NOUNS

* The ETON rules for heteroclites being very short, and in most schools passed over, as being either unnecessary, or insufficient; it has been thought proper to give a connected view of this part of grammar, that when any difficulty occurs, the scholar may know where to find a solution of it.

1. HETEROCLITES are nouns which differ from the common way of declining, by being VARIANT, REDUNDANT, OR DEFECTIVE.

2. VARIANTS change their gender or declension; REDUNDANTS have different endings, or ways of declining; DEFECTIVES want either case or number.

I. VARIANTS.

1. The masculines *Avernus*, *Dindymus*, *Ismarus*, *Massicus*, *Mænarus*, *Pangæus*, *Tænarus*, *Tartarus*, *Taygetus*, and the two feminine *carbasus*, *Pergamus*, are neuter in the plural: *jocus* and *locus* are masculine and neuter: as, S. N. *hic Avernus*, G. *Avérni*, &c. P. N. *hæc Avérna*, G. *Avernörum*, &c. S. N. *hic jocus*, G. *jocis*, &c. P. N. *hi joci*, and *hæc joca*, G. *jocorum*, &c.

2. *Calum*, *Elysium*, *Argos*, are masculine in the plural; *frænum* and *rastrum*, masculine and neuter: as S. N. *hoc cælum*, G. *cæli*, &c. P. N. *hi cæli*, G. *cælorum*, D. *cælis*, Ac. *cælos*, &c. S. N. *hoc frænum*, G. *fræni*, &c. Pl. *hi fræni*, and *hæc fræna*.

3. *Delicium* and *epulum* are of the first declension in the plural; *balneum* is of both the first and second; as S.N. *hoc delicium*, &c. *hoc balneum*, &c. P. N. *ha balnea*, vel *hæc balnea*, &c.

4. *Vas*, a vessel, becomes of the second declension in the plural; as S. N. *hoc vas*, G. *vasis*, D. *vasi*, A. *vas*, Ab. *vasc*. P. N. *hæc vasa*, G. *vasrum*, D. *vasis*, &c.

5. Greek nouns in *ma*, as *poëma*, *epigrama*, in the dative and ablative plural take also the form of the second declension; as P. N. *hæc poëmatæ*, G. *poëmatum*, v. *poëmaton*, D. *poëmatis*, v. *poëmatibus*, &c.

6. These vary their senses in the singular and plural number; *rostrum*, *fortuna*, *facultas*, *mos*, *opus*, *ædes*; *so sal* and *divus*.

II. REDUNDANTS.

1. The following nouns and many others, have different endings in the nominative, but retain the same sense.

<i>accidit</i> ,	<i>cæsis</i> ,	<i>exanimis</i> ,	<i>imbecillis</i> ,	<i>oda</i> ,	<i>scrobitis</i> ,
<i>acciditus</i> ;	<i>cassida</i> ;	<i>exanimus</i> ;	<i>imbecillus</i> ;	<i>ode</i> ;	<i>scrobs</i> ;
<i>arbor</i> ,	<i>conger</i> ,	<i>gruis</i> ,	<i>labor</i> ,	<i>odor</i> ,	<i>sensus</i> ,
<i>arbos</i> ;	<i>congrus</i> ;	<i>grus</i> ;	<i>labos</i> ;	<i>odos</i> ;	<i>sensum</i> ;
<i>baculus</i> ,	<i>crater</i> ,	<i>honor</i> ,	<i>menda</i> ,	<i>puber</i> ,	<i>vomis</i> ,
<i>baculum</i> ;	<i>cratæra</i> ;	<i>hono</i> ;	<i>mendum</i> ;	<i>pubes</i> ;	<i>vomer</i> .

2. These, with one ending, have different senses: *calx*, *malum*, *malus*, *palus*, &c. *Domus* is of the second and fourth declensions; as S. N. *hæc domus*; G. *i v. ds*; D. *o v. ui*; Ac. *um*; V. *us*; Ab. *o v. u*. P. N. *ha domus*; G. *brum* v. *um*, D. *ibus*; Ac. *os v. us*; V. *us*; Ab. *ibus*. It wants

NOUNS changing their Gender and Declining.

*HÆC genus, ac, flexum, partim variantia cernis;
Pergamus in numero plurali Pergama gignit.*

Dat.

me in the singular, *mi* and *mis* in the plural. *Colus, fucus, laurus, pinus*, of the second, make also *u* in the ablative, and *us* in the plural cases. *Quercus*, of the fourth, makes *querorum*, as well as *quercuum*; and *versus* in the plural *versi, versorum, versis*, as well as the regular cases.

3. *Chremes, Dares, Laches, Thales*, make *is* and *itis* in the genitive; *Calchas, e* and *antis*; *Boëtes, Euphrates, Ordetes, e* and *is*; *requis, étis* and *itis*; *plebes, plebis* and *plebet*;—with many more.

III. DEFECTIVES.

DEFECTIVES IN CASE.

1. Aptots.

1. All nouns in *u* are aptots in the singular, but regular in the plural; as *cornu*.

2. Nouns in *i* are aptots in both numbers: as *gummi*, so likewise *pendo*.

3. The adjectives *nequam, frugi*, are aptots in both numbers. The substantives *semis, frit, git, cepe, gausape*, are singular aptots; and the adjectives *tot, quot*, with their compounds *totidem, aliquot, &c.*, and numerals from *quatuor* to *centum*, are plural aptots; as, S. N. *hoc gummi*, P. N. *hec gummi*, undeclined. S. N. *hic, hæc, hoc, nequam*. P. N. *hi, hæ, hæc, nequam*, undeclined. S. N. *hoc, semis*, undeclined. P. N. *hi, hæ, hæc, tot*, undeclined. The adjective *mille* is a plural aptot: as *hi, hæ, hæc, mille*, undeclined: the substantive *mille* is an aptot in the singular, but regular in the plural; as, S. N. *hoc mille*, undeclined. P. N. *hæc mille*, G. *tum*, D. *ibus*, A. C. *ia*, &c.

2. Monoptots.

1. These have only a nominative case: *Eos, damnas, inquies, expes, hic et hæc potis, hoc poti*; or *hic, hæc, hoc, potis*.

2. *Dicis* and *nauci* have only the genitive; *despicatu*, *ostentatu*, the dative only; and these the ablative only; *ergo* for *caus*, *accitu*, *natu*, *noctu*, *jusu*, *injusu*, *promptu*, and *permisso*. *Inficias, incitas*, are the accusative plural: as, *inficias eo, ad incitas reductus*. *Ingratiis* or *ingratis* is the ablative.

3. The masculines *casse, caſſite, annah*, and the feminine *fauce*, have only the ablative case in the singular number, but are entire in the plural. To these add the feminine *ambage*, which wants the genitive plural; as S. Ab. *hoc casse*. P. N. *hi casses*, G. *ism*, D. *ibus*, A. C. *es*, Ab. *ibus*, S. Ab. *hæc ambage*. P. N. *es*, D. *ibus*, A. C. *es*, V. *es*, Ab. *ibus*.

3. Diprots.

1. N. Ab. *hoc necſse, necſſum, volupe, instar, hir, astu* when it signifies a city. N. *astus*, Ab. *astu*, craft. N. *siremps*, Ab. *stremps*.

2. G. *impetus, Ab. impete*: Ab. Pl. *impetibus*. G. *spontis, Ab. sponte*. G. *verberis, Ab. verbere*; G. *jugeris, Ab. jugere*, both entire in the plural; as, P. N. *hæc verbera, G. us, D. ibus, &c.*

3. Add G. *compedis, Ab. compede*, wanting the genitive in the plural. G. Pl. *repetundrum, Ab. repetundis*. N. *suppetis, Ac. suppetas*: N. *inſerie, Ac. inſerias*.

4. Tripletas.

*Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumque,
Rastrum cum freno, filum simul atque capistrum :
Argos item, et cœlum, sunt singula neutra : sed audi,*
Mascula

4. Triptots.

1. *Fas, nefas, nihil, nil, and secus*, when of the third declension; also *epos, cacothæs, hippomanes*, and other Greek neuters in *es*, have only the N. Ac. V. singular.

2. The neuters *cete, Temps, mele, pelage*, have only the N. Ac. V. plural; and N. *vesper, Ac. vesperem, Ab. vesperc*, singular.

3. *Tantudem, tantidem*, has the N. G. and Ac. singular: *mane, N. Ac. and Ab. singular; sometimes mani in the Ab. Dica* has the accusative singular *dicam*, and G. *feminis* makes D. *i*, Ab. *e*. Pl. N. Ac. V. *femina, D. preci, Ac. precem, Ab. prece*, is entire in the plural.

4. *Rus, thus, sel, mel, hyems, hilum, solium, far, ebur, metus, spes, species, acies, facies, glacies, effigies, eluvies*, have only the N. Ac. V. in the plural.

5. Tetrapots.

1. *Ditionis, frugis, opis, pecudis, sordis, viciis*, want the nominative, and consequently the vocative. Note, *ditionis* wants the plural, *viciis* wants the genitive plural; and *opis* signifies wealth and power in that number.

6. Pentapots.

1. *Chaos, melos, satias*, want the genitive singular; and *os, a* mouth, with *fus, sol, vici, labes, soboles, proles, grates*, want the genitive plural. *Plus* and defective pronouns were mentioned before.

DEFECTIVES IN NUMBER.

1. Singulars.

1. Proper names of men and women, also proper names of places (except those which are only plural), with most names of virtues, vices, herbs, liquors, metals, and abstract qualities, most nouns of the fifth declension, and many others which are known by the sense, want the plural number: as, *Augustus, Livia, Roma, justitia, luxus, hyssopus, aurum, lac, nectar, senectus, macies, butyrum*.

The following nouns also want the plural:

<i>atr,</i>	<i>gypnum,</i>	<i>mundus, a wo-</i>	<i>prolubium,</i>	<i>venia,</i>
<i>ether,</i>	<i>hepar,</i>	<i>man's attire,</i>	<i>pubes,</i>	<i>ver,</i>
<i>album,</i>	<i>heperns,</i>	<i>muscus,</i>	<i>pulvis,</i>	<i>vespera,</i>
<i>argilla,</i>	<i>hunus,</i>	<i>nectar,</i>	<i>pus,</i>	<i>veternum,</i>
<i>barathrum,</i>	<i>jubar,</i>	<i>nemo,</i>	<i>sabulum,</i>	<i>virus,</i>
<i>canum,</i>	<i>jugerum,</i>	<i>nihilum,</i>	<i>sal,</i>	<i>viscum or</i>
<i>crocum,</i>	<i>justitium,</i>	<i>nitrum,</i>	<i>salum,</i>	<i>viscus,</i>
<i>diluculum,</i>	<i>lardum,</i>	<i>omânum,</i>	<i>salus,</i>	<i>vitrum,</i>
<i>fœnum,</i>	<i>lethum,</i>	<i>penum,</i>	<i>sanguis,</i>	<i>vulgaris,</i>
<i>finus,</i>	<i>limus,</i>	<i>penus,</i>	<i>senium,</i>	<i>zinziber.</i>
<i>gelu,</i>	<i>lucus,</i>	<i>pelagus,</i>	<i>sitis,</i>	
<i>glarea,</i>	<i>lutum,</i>	<i>piper,</i>	<i>supplex,</i>	
<i>glastum,</i>	<i>mane,</i>	<i>plebs,</i>	<i>tabes,</i>	
<i>gluten,</i>	<i>meridies,</i>	<i>pontus,</i>	<i>tabum,</i>	

These are sometimes found in the plural.

<i>billis,</i>	<i>cutis,</i>	<i>fames,</i>	<i>labes,</i>	<i>pituita,</i>	<i>quies,</i>	<i>talio,</i>
<i>cholera,</i>	<i>fama,</i>	<i>gloria,</i>	<i>pax,</i>	<i>pix,</i>	<i>ros,</i>	<i>tellus.</i>

III. Plurals

*Mascula duntaxat cœlos vocitabis, et Argos:
Frena sed et frenos, quo pacto et cætera formant.*

II. Plurals.

2. The names of several cities, books, feasts, and sciences, want the singular; as *Philippi*, *Athénæ*, *Bactra*, *Georgica*, *Bacchanalia*, *Olympia*, *musica*.

Add these particular nouns:

<i>acta,</i>	<i>fusces, sc.</i>	<i>manubia,</i>	<i>repotia,</i>
<i>affanīæ,</i>	<i>Rom. Mag.</i>	<i>mānia,</i>	<i>rostra,</i>
<i>antes,</i>	<i>fasti, or fastus,</i>	<i>magalla,</i> both of	<i>sales, repartees,</i>
<i>apīnæ,</i>	<i>facetiæ,</i>	the 3d.	<i>salebræ,</i>
<i>argutīæ,</i>	<i>feriæ,</i>	<i>mine,</i>	<i>salinæ,</i>
<i>arma,</i>	<i>fines, a territory,</i>	<i>minores,</i>	<i>scale,</i>
<i>æstiva,</i>	<i>flabria,</i>	<i>minutio,</i>	<i>scatebræ,</i>
<i>bellaria,</i>	<i>fori,</i>	<i>multititia,</i>	<i>scopæ,</i>
<i>bona,</i>	<i>fortunæ, forbona,</i>	<i>munia,</i>	<i>scruta,</i>
<i>brevia, of the</i>	<i>fusfures, scurf,</i>	<i>natales,</i>	<i>sponsalia, of the</i>
<i>third,</i>	<i>Gargara,</i>	<i>none,</i>	<i>3d.</i>
<i>calendæ,</i>	<i>gerræ,</i>	<i>nugæ,</i>	<i>statiua,</i>
<i>cancelli,</i>	<i>hyberna,</i>	<i>nundinæ,</i>	<i>superi,</i>
<i>cani,</i>	<i>idus,</i>	<i>nuptiæ,</i>	<i>talaria, of the 3d.</i>
<i>castra,</i>	<i>ilia, of the 3d.</i>	<i>officiæ, tricks,</i>	<i>tenebræ,</i>
<i>Ceraunia, or</i>	<i>incunabula,</i>	<i>opæ, riches,</i>	<i>tesqua,</i>
<i>Acroceraunia,</i>	<i>inferi,</i>	<i>pandectæ,</i>	<i>thermæ,</i>
<i>clitellæ,</i>	<i>induciæ,</i>	<i>parietinæ,</i>	<i>tori, the muscles,</i>
<i>codicilli,</i>	<i>induviæ,</i>	<i>partes, a faction,</i>	<i>transtra,</i>
<i>comitia,</i>	<i>insidiæ,</i>	<i>parapherna,</i>	<i>trica,</i>
<i>crepundia,</i>	<i>justa,</i>	<i>pendæ,</i>	<i>trigæ,</i>
<i>cunæ,</i>	<i>lactes,</i>	<i>plagiæ, signifying</i>	<i>valvæ,</i>
<i>cunabula,</i>	<i>lamenta,</i>	<i>nets,</i>	<i>vindiciæ,</i>
<i>decimæ,</i>	<i>lapicidinæ,</i>	<i>posteri,</i>	<i>vergiliæ,</i>
<i>dire,</i>	<i>lautia,</i>	<i>phalera,</i>	Add the adjectives
<i>divitiae,</i>	<i>Lemures,</i>	<i>præcordia,</i>	<i>ambo and pauci,</i>
<i>excubia,</i>	<i>lendes,</i>	<i>præstigiæ,</i>	<i>with most ad-</i>
<i>exequiæ,</i>	<i>Luceres,</i>	<i>primitiæ,</i>	<i>jectives of num-</i>
<i>exta,</i>	<i>lustra, dens of</i>	<i>principia,</i>	<i>ber.</i>
<i>exuviae,</i>	<i>wild beasts,</i>	<i>pugillares,</i>	
<i>facultates,</i>	<i>majores,</i>	<i>quisquiliæ,</i>	
for <i>opus,</i>	<i>manes,</i>	<i>reliquiæ,</i>	

These are sometimes found in the singular.

<i>angustiæ,</i>	<i>bigæ,</i>	<i>liberi,</i>	<i>proceres,</i>	<i>plerique,</i>
<i>artus,</i>	<i>charites,</i>	<i>mapalia,</i>	<i>quadrigæ,</i>	<i>an adjective.</i>
<i>ædes,</i>	<i>fores,</i>	<i>operæ,</i>	and	

In this place it may be proper to subjoin Adjectives of Number, or Numerals.

1. The cardinal and ordinal numbers are,

Cardinals.

Ordinals.

I.	1 - - - - <i>Unus</i>	- - - - -	<i>Primus,</i>
II.	2 - - - - <i>duo</i>	- - - - -	<i>secundus,</i>
III.	3 - - - - <i>tres</i>	- - - - -	<i>tertius,</i>
IV.	4 - - - - <i>quatuor</i>	- - - - -	<i>quartus,</i>

*Pluralis numerus genus his solet addere utrumque;
Sibilus, atque jocus, locus.—His quoque plurima jungas.*

V.	5	- - - quinque	- - - quintus
VI.	6	- - - sex	- - - sextus
VII.	7	- - - septem	- - - septimus
VIII.	8	- - - octo	- - - octavus
IX.	9	- - - novem	- - - nonus
X.	10	- - - decem	- - - decimus
XI.	11	- - - undecim, -	- - - undecimus
XII.	12	- - - duodecim	- - - duodecimus
XIII.	13	- - - tredecim	- - - decimus tertius
XIV.	14	- - - quatuordecim	- - - decimus quartus
XV.	15	- - - quindecim	- - - decimus quintus
XVI.	16	{ sexdecim, or sedenim }	- - - decimus sextus
XVII.	17	- - - septendecim	- - - decimus septimus
XVIII.	18	- - - octodecim	{ decimus octavus, or duodevigesimal
XIX.	19	- - - novemdecim	- - - decimus nonus
XX.	20	- - - viginti	- - - vigesimal
XXI.	21	- - - unus et viginti	- - - vigesimalis primus, &c.
XXX.	30	- - - triginta	- - - trigesimus
XL.	40	- - - quadraginta	- - - quadragesimalis
L.	50	- - - quinquaginta	- - - quinquagesimus
LX.	60	- - - sexaginta	- - - sexagesimus
LXX.	70	- - - septuaginta	- - - septuagesimus
LXXX.	80	- - - octoginta	- - - octogesimalis
XC.	90	- - - nonaginta	- - - nonagesimus
C.	100	- - - centum	- - - centesimalis
CC.	200	- - - ducenti	- - - ducentesimalis
CCC.	300	- - - trecenti	- - - trecentesimalis
CCCC.	400	- - - quadragecenti	- - - quadragecentesimalis
D.	500	- - - quingenti	- - - quingentesimalis
DC.	600	- - - sexcenti	- - - sexcentesimalis
DCC.	700	- - - septingenti	- - - septingentesimalis
DCCC.	800	- - - octingenti	- - - octingentesimalis
DCCCC.	900	{ nongenti, or noningenti }	- - - nongentesimalis
M.	1000	- - - mille	- - - millesimalis
MM.	2000	{ duo millia, or bis mille }	- - - bis millesimalis, &c.

2. *Tres* is declined like the plural of *tristis*; other numerals from *quatuor* to *centum* are undeclined.

3. Distributives are *singuli*, *binū*, *terni*, *quaterni*, *quini*, *seni*, &c.—*Unde* and *duode* are joined to most even numbers increasing by tens, to express one or two less; as *undeviginti* 19:—*duodetriginta*, 28.

NOUNS defective.

QUÆ sequitur, manca est casu, numerōve, propago.

I. Aptota, or NOUNS undeclined.

*QUÆ nulum variant casum ; ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar,
Multæ et in u, simul i ; ut sunt hæc, cornuque, genuque,
Sic gummi, frugi : sic Tempe, tot, quot, et omnes
A tribus ad centum numeros : aptota vocabis.*

II. Monoptota, or NOUNS declined with one Case.

*ESTQUE monoptoton nomen, cui vox cadit una :
Ceu, noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, simul astu,
Promptu, permissu : plurali legimus astus ;
Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est.*

III. Diptota, or NOUNS declined with two Cases..

*SUNT diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit ;
Ut, fors forte dabit sexto, sponte quoque sponte ;
Jugeris et sexto dat jugere ; verberis autem
Verbere : suppetiæ quarto quoque suppetias dant ;
Tantundem dat tantidem, simul impetis et dat
Impete ;
Sic repetundarum repetundis. Verberis altero
Quatuor in numero casus cum jugere servant.*

IV. Triptota, or NOUNS declined with three Cases.

*TRES quibus inflectis casus, triptota vocantur :
Sic opis est nostræ, fer opem legis, atque ope dignus :
Flecte preci, atque precem, petit et prece blandus amicam ;
At tantum recto frugis caret, et ditionis ;
Integra vox vis est, nisi desit fortè dativus :
His vicis atque vicem et jungas vice : plus quoque pluris
Plus habet et quarto : His numerus datur omnibus alter.*

V. NOUNS defective in the Plural Number.

*PROPRIA cuncta notes, quibus est natura coërcens,
Plurima ne fuerint : alia et tibi multa legenti
Occurrent, numerum raro excedentia primum.*

VI. NOUNS defective in the Singular Number.

MASCULA sunt tantum numero contenta secundo,
 Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, et antes,
 Lendes et lemures, fasti simul, atque minores,
 Cum genus assignant natales; adde penates,
 Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locrique,
 Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.

Hæc sunt fæminei generis, numerique secundi;
 Exuviae, phaleræ, gratæque, manubiæ, et idus,
 Antiae, et induciæ: simul insidæque, minæque,
 Excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæque, calendæ,
 Quisquiliæ, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, excuiæque,
 Feriæ, et inferiæ; sic primitæque, plagæque,
 Retia signantes, et valvæ, divitiæque,
 Nuptiæ item, et lactes; addantur Thebæ et Athenæ,
 Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.

Iarius hæc primo pluralia neutra leguntur:
 Mœnia, cum tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,
 Arma, mapalia; sic bellaria, munia, castra;
 Funus justa petit, petit et sponsalia virgo;
 Rostra disertus amat, puerique crepundia gestant,
 Infantæque colunt cunabula; consulit exta
 Augur, et absolvens superis effata recitat;
 Festa deum poterunt, ceu Bacchanalia, jungi:
 Quòd si plura leges, licet hæc quoque classe reponas.

NOUNS declined after both the second and fourth declension.

HÆC simul et quarti flexus sunt atque secundi;
 Laurus enim lauri facit et lauris genitivo,
 Sic quercus, pinus, pro fructu ac arbore ficus,
 Sic colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur,
 Sic lacus atque domus: licet hæc nec ubique recurrent.
 His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquas.

OF THE
 PRETERPERFECT TENSE,
 AND
 SUPINES OF VERBS.

I. Of the Preterperfect Tense of simple Verbs.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

As ————— *avi.*

AS in præsenti perfectum format in avi :
Ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi.
Deme lavo lavi, juvo juvi, nexōque nexui,
Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mico *verbum*
Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui *dat* :
Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono *verbum*.
Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui *dat*,
Atque cubo cubui : *raro hæc formantur in avi.*
Do das ritè dedi, sto stas formare steti *vult*.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Es ————— *ui.*

Es in præsenti perfectum format ui dans :
Ut nigreo nigres nigrui : jubeo excipe jussi :
Sorbeo sorbui *habet* sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulsi :
Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videōque
Vult vidi : *sed* prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,
Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, *habet* ardeo et arsi.

Quatuor his infrà geminatur syllaba prima:
Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi,
Spondeo habere spoondi, tondeo vultque totondi.

L vel r ante geo si stet, geo vertitur in si:
Urgeo ut ursi ; mulgeo mulsi *dat* quoque mulxi,
Frigeo frixi, lugeo luxi, *habet* augeo et auxi.

Dat fleo fles flevi, leo les levi, *indéque natum*
Deleo delevi ; pleo ples plevi, nec nevi.

A maneo mansi *formatur*; torqueo torsi,
Hæreo vult hæsi. *Veo fit vi* : *ut* ferveo fervi ;
Niveo, *et indè satum poscit* conniveo, nivi
Et nixi ; cieo civi, vieōque vievi.

The THIRD CONJUGATION.

TERTIA præteritum formabit ut hæc manifestum.

*Bo fit bi: ut lambo lambi: scribo excipe scripsi,
Et nubo nupsi; antiquum cumbo cubui dat.*

*Co fit ci: ut vinco vici: vult parco pepercí,
Et parsi; dico dixi, duco quoque duxi.*

*Do fit di: ut mando mandi; sed scindo scidi dut,
Findo fidi, fundo fudi, tundo tutudique,
Pendo pependi, tendo tetendi, junge cadoque
Quod cecidi format; pro verbero cædo cecidi;
Cedo pro discedere, sive locum dare, cessi:
Vadq, rado, laedo, ludo, divido, trudo,
Claudo, plaudio, rodo, ex do semper faciunt si.*

*Go fit xi: ut jungo junxi: sed r ante go vult si,
Ut spargo sparsi; lego legi, et ago facit egi:
Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi pupugique;
Dat frango fregi, pepigi vult pago paciscor,
Pango etiam pegin, sed panxi maluit usus.*

*Ho fit xi: traho ceu traxi docet, et veho vexi.
Lo fit ui: colo ceu colui: psallo excipe cum p,
Et sallo sine p, nam li tibi format utrumque;
Dat vello velli vulsi quoque, fallo feffelli,
Cello pro frango ceculi, pello pepulique.*

*Mo fit ui: vomo ceu vomui: sed emo facit emi;
Como petit compsi, promo prompsai: adiice demo
Quod format dempsi, sumo sumpsi: premo pressi.*

*No fit vi: sino ceu sivi: temno excipe tempsi;
Dat sterno stravi, sperno sprevi, lino levi,
Interdum lini et livi, cerno quoque crevi:
Gigno, pono, cano; genui, posui, cecini, dant.*

*Po fit psi: ut scalpo scalpsi: rumpo excipe rupi,
Et strepo quod format strepui, crepo quod crepui dat.*

Quo fit qui: ut linquo liqui: coquo demito coxi.

*Ro fit vi: sero ceu pro planio et semino sevi,
Quod serui melius semper dabit ordino signans.
Vult verro verri et versi, uro ussi, gero gessi,
Quæro quæsivi, tero trivi, curro cucurri.*

*So, veluti probat arcesso, incesso, atque lacesso,
Formabit sivi: sed tolle capesso capessi*

Quodque

*Quódque capessivi facit, atque facesso facessi,
Et viso visi : sed pinso pinsui habebit.*

*Sco fit vi : ut pasco pavi : vult posco poposci,
Vult didici disco, quexi formare quinisco.*

*To fit ti : ut verto verti : sed sisto notetur
Pro facio stare activum, nam jure stiti dat ;
Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi ;
Sterto stertui habet, meto messui : *Ab* ecto fit exi ;
Ut flecto flexi : necto dat nexui habéique
Nexi ; etiam pecto dat pexui, habet quoque pexi.*

*Vo fit vi : ut volvo volvi : vivo excipe vixi.
Xo fit ui : ut monstrat texo, quod texui habebit.*

*Fit cio ci : ut facio feci, jacio quoque jeci :
Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.*

*Fit dio di : ut fodio fodi : Gio, ceu fugio, gi.
Fit pio pi : ut capio cepi : cupio excipe pivi :*

Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui atque sapivi.

*Fit rio ri : ut pario peperi. Tio, ssi, *geminans* s,
Ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu.*

*Denique uo fit ui ; ut, statuo statui : pluo pluvi
Format, sive plui ; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.*

The FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Is _____ ivi.

Quarta dat is ivi : ut monstrat scio scis tibi scivi.

Excipias venio dans veni, et veneo venii :

Raucio rausi, farcio farsi, sarsio sarsi,

Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulsi,

Haurio item hausi, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi ;

Pro salto salio saluī, et amicio amicui dat.

II. Of the Preterperfect Tense of compound Verbs.

PRÆTERITUM dat idem simplex et compositivum :

Ut docui edocui monstrat : sed syllaba, semper

Quam simplex geminat, composto non geminatur :

Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo ;

Atque à do, disco, sto, posco, ritè creatis.

A plico compositum cum sub vel nomine, ut ista,

Supplico, multiplico, gaudent formare plicavi ;

Applico, complico, replico, et explico, ui quoque formant.

Quamvis

*Quamvis vult oleo simplex olui, tamen indè
Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi ;
Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur, subolētque.*

*Composita à pungo formabunt omnia punxi ;
Vult unum pupugi, interdūmque repungo, repunxi.*

*Natum à do, quando est inflexio tertia, ut, addo,
Credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, vel obdo,
Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo, didi : at unum
Abscondo, abscondi. Natum à sto stas, stiti habebit.*

Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *E*.

*VERBA hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in e mutant :
Damno, lacto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,
Cando vetus, capto, jacto, patior, gradiorque,
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo ; pariōque,
Cujus nata per i duo, comperit et reperit, dant ;
Cætera sed per ui, velut hæc, aperire, operire.*

*A pasco pavi tantum composta notentur
Hæc duo, compesco, dispesco, pescui habere.
Cætera, ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.*

Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *I*.

*HÆC habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lædo,
Et tango, atque cano, sic quæro, cædo, cecidi,
Sic egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapiōque,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant :
Ut rapio rapui, eripio eripui : A cano natum
Præteritum per ui, ceu concino concinui, dat.*

*A placeo sic displiceo, sed simplicis usum
Hæc duo, complaceo cum perplaceo, bene servant.*

*Composita à verbis calco, salto, a per u mutant :
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, resulto.*

*Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a :
Id docet à claudio, occludo, excludo ; à quatiōque,
Percutio, excutio ; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.*

Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel of the Present Tense into *I*, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

HÆC si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,

Et

*Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, pango,
 Vocalem primam præsentis in i sibi mutant,
 Præteriti nunquam: ceu, frango, refringo refregi:
 A capio, incipio incepit: sed pauca notentur:
 Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, satagōque;
 Atque ab ago, dego dat degi, cogo, coëgi;
 A rego, sic pergo perrexi: vult quoque surgo
 Surrexi: mediā præsentis syllabā ademptā.*

*Composita à pango, retinent a quatuor ista:
 Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.*

*Nil variat facio, nisi præposito præeunte,
 Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficiōque.*

*A lego nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte,
 Præsentis servant vocalem; in i cætera mutant;
 De quibus hæc, intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum
 Præteritum lexi faciunt; reliqua omnia legi.*

III. Of the Supines of simple Verbs.

*NUNC ex præterito discas formare supinum.
 Bi sibi tum sumit: sic namque bibi bibitum fit.*

*Ci fit ctum: ut vici victum testatur, et ici
 Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.*

*Di fit sum: ut vidi visum: quædam geminant s:
 Ut pandi passum, sedi sessum, adde scidi quod
 Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossum.*

*Hic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima supinis,
 Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur:
 Idque totondi dans tonsum docet, atque cecidi
 Quod cæsum, et cecidi quod dat casum, atque tetendi
 Quod tensum et tentum, tutudi tunsum, atque dedi quod
 Jure datum poscit, morsum vult atque momordi.*

*Gi fit ctum: ut, legi lectum, pegi pepigique
 Dant pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum,
 Egi actum, pupugi punctum: fugi fugitum dat.*

*Li fit sum: ut salli, stans pro sale condio, salsum:
 Dat pepuli pulsum, ceculi culsum, atque fefelli
 Falsum; dat velli vulsum: tuli habet quoque latum.*

*Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum formant, velut hic manifestum:
 Emi emptum, veni ventum, cecini à cano cantum;*

A capio cepi captum ; ccepi quoque coeptum :

A ruinpo rupi ruptum : liqui quoque lictum.

Ri fit sum : *ut*, verri versum ; peperi *excipe* partum.

Si fit sum : *ut*, visi visum ; *tamen* s *geminato*

Misi *formabit* missum ; fulsi *excipe* fultum,

Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi quoque fartum,

Ussi ustum, gessi gestum ; torsi *duo* tortum

Et torsum : indulsi indultum, indulsumque requirit.

Psi fit ptum : *ut* scripsi scriptum ; sculpsai quoque sculptum.

Ti fit tum : à sto namque steti, à sistóque stiti, dant

Ambo ritè statum : verti *tamen* *excipe* versum.

Vi fit tum : *ut* flavi flatum ; pavi *excipe* pastum :

Dat lavi lotum, *interdum* lautum atque lavatum,

Potavi potum, *interdum* facit et potatum,

Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum : *A* sero sevi

Formes ritè satum, livi linique litum dant,

Solvi à solvo solutum, volvi à volvo volutum :

Vult singultivi singultum, veneo venis

Venivi venum, sepelivi ritè sepultum.

Quod dat ui dat itum : *ut* domui domitum ; *excipe* quodvis

Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in utum ;

Exui ut exutum : à ruo deme rui ruitum dans :

Vult secui sectum, necui nectum, fricuque

Frictum, miscui item mistum, et amicui dat amictum ;

Torrui habet tostum, docui doctum, tenuique

Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum alitumque ;

Sic salui saltum, colui occului quoque cultum ;

Pinsui habet pistum, rapui raptum, seruque

A sero vult sertum ; sic texui habet quoque textum.

Hæc sed ui mutant in sum ; nam censeo censem,

Cellui habet celsum, meto messui habet quoque messum ;

Nexui item nexum, sic pexui habet quoque pexum.

Xi fit ctum : *ut* vinxi vinctum : quinque abjiciunt n ;

Ut finxi fictum, minxi mictum, adjice pinxi

Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi quoque rictum.

Xum flexi, plexi, fixi dant ; et fluo fluxum.

IV. Of the Supines of compound Verbs.

*COMPOSITUM ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utriusque.*

*Composita à tunsum, demptā n, tusum : à ruitum fit,
I mediā demptā, rutum ; et à saltum quoque sultum ;
A sero, quando satum format, composta situm dant.*

*Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant ;
Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, quoque fartum.*

*Verbum edo compositum non estum, sed facit esum ;
Unum duntaxat comedo formabit utrumque.*

*A nosco tantum duo cognitum et agnatum habentur,
Cætera dant notum : nullo est jam noscitur in usu.*

V. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in *OR.*

VERBA in or, admittunt ex posteriore supino

Præteritum, verso u per us, et sum consociato

Vel fui : ut à lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum

Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum.

Nam labor lapsus ; patior dut passus, et ejus

Nata ; ut, compatiōr compassus, perpetiōrque

Formans perpessus ; fateor dat fassus, et indē

Nata ; ut, confiteor confessus, diffiteorque

Formans diffessus, gradior dat gressus, et indē

Nata ; ut, digredior digressus : junge fatiscor

Fessus sum, mensus sum metior, utor et usus.

Pro texo orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orsus,

Nitor nitus vel nixus sum, ulciscor et ultus ;

Irascor simul iratus, reor atque ratus sum,

Oliviscor vult oblitus sum, fruor optat

Fructus vel fruitus : misereri junge misertus.

Vult tuor et tueor non tutus, sed tuitus sum ;

A loquor addē locutus, et à sequor addē secutus.

Exerior facit expertus ; formare paciscor

Gaudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus, apiscor

Quod vetus est verbum aptus sum, unde adipiscor adeptus.

Junge queror questus, proficiscor junge profectus,

Expergiscor sum experrectus ; et hæc quoque commi-

niscor commentus, nascor natus, moriōrque

Mortuus, atque orior quod præteritum facit ortus.

VI. Of Verbs which make the Preterperfect Tense both
in the active and passive Voice.

PRÆTERITUM activæ et passivæ vocis habent hæc:
Cœno coenavi et cœnatus sum *tibi format*,
Juro juravi et juratus, potōque potavi
Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titubatus.

Prandeo prandi et pransus sum, placebo placui *dat*
Et placitus, suesco suevi vult atque suetus.

Nubo nupsi nuptāque sum, mereor meritus sum
Vel merui: adde libet libuit libitum, et licet adde
Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tæduit et dat
Pertæsum; *adde pudet faciens puduit puditumque;*
Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigitumque.

VII. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs Neuter-passive.
NEUTRO-passivum sic *præteritum tibi format*;
Gaudeo gavisus sum, fido fisus, et audeo
Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum.

Verbs which want the Preterperfect Tense.
PRÆTERITUM fugiunt, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco,
Pollico, nideo: *ad hæc inceptiva; ut, puerasco;*
Et passiva, quibus caruere activa supinis;
Ut metuor, timeor: meditativa omnia, præter
Parturio, esurio, *quæ præteritum duo servant.*

Verbs which seldom admit a Supine.
HÆC raro aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum.
Lambo, mico micui, rudo, scabo, parco pepercī,
Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,
Dego, ango, sugo, lingo, ningō, satagōque,
Psallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,
Flaveo, liveo, avet, paveo, conniveo, fervet.

A nuo *compositum, ut* renuo: à cado, *ut* accido, *præter*
Occido *quod facit* occasum, recidōque *recasum:*
Respuo, linquo, luo, motuo, cluo, frigeo, calveo,
Et sterto, timeo: *sic luceo, et arceo, cuius*
Composita ercitum habent; sic à gruo, ut, ingruo, nata;
Et quæcunque in ui formantur neutra secundæ;
Excipias oleo, doleo, placebo, taceoque,
Pareo, item careo, noceo, jaceo, lateoque,
Et valeo, caleo; gaudent hæc namque supino.

SYNTAXIS ;
OR THE
CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

CONCORDANTIA Prima.

Nominativus et Verbum.

*The First Concord: The Nominative Case and the Verb.**

VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

Sera nunquam ^best ad bonos mores ^avia. Sen.

Nominativus pronominum raro exprimitur, nisi distinctionis, aut emphasis gratiâ: ut,

^aVos ^bdamnâstis: quasi dicat, præterea nemo.

^aTu ^bes patronus, ^atu parens, si ^bdeseris ^atu, perimus: quasi dicat, præcipue, et præ aliis, *Tu patronus es, &c.*

^aFertur atrocia flagitia designâsse.

* ILLUSTRATIONS and EXCEPTIONS under some of the more difficult Rules.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE AND THE VERB.

1. Every sentence *must* have a verb; but *sum* is often understood: as *quot homines, tot sententias.* Ter.

2. The infinitive is sometimes varied by *quid* and an indicative. But to denote the *final cause*, i. e. any *purpose* or *design*, *ut* and the subjunctive mood must be constantly used. The accusatives *me, te, se*, are sometimes understood: as, *sed reddere posse negabat.* Vir.

3. The infinitive, when it has an accusative case before it, has commonly the signs of the indicative, *that* being expressed or understood before the noun: as, *Pres. te redire gaudeo, I am glad that you are returning;* *Imp. te redire gaudeo, I am glad that you were returning;* *Perf. te rediisse gaudeo, I am glad that you have returned;* *Pluperf. te rediisse gaudeo, I am glad that you had returned;* *Fut. te redditum esse gaudeo, I am glad that you will return, or, that you would or should return.*

Aliquando

Aliquando oratio est verbo nominativus : ut,
 • *Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes*
 • *Emollit mores, nec b'sinit esse feros.* Ovid.

Aliquando adverbium cum genitivo : ut,
 • *Partim virorum b'cederunt in bello.*

Exceptions.

VERBA infinitivi modi frequenter pro nominativo accusativum ante se statuunt, conjunctione *quòd*, vel *ut*, omissa : ut,
 • *Te b'rediisse incolumem gaudeo.*

II. Verbum inter duos nominativos diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest : ut,
Amantium iræ amoris integratio est. Ter.
 • *Pectus quoque robora b'funt.* Ovid.

III. Nomen multitudinis singulare quandoque verbo plurali jungitur : ut,
 • *Pars b'abière.* • *Uterque b'luduntur dolis.*

Impersonalia nominativum non habent præcedentem : ut,
 • *Tædet me vitæ.* • *Pertæsum est conjugii.*

CONCORDANTIA Secunda.

Substantivum et Adjectivum, &c.

The Second Concord : The Substantive and the Adjective, &c.

ADJECTIVA, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo, genere, numero, et casu, concordant : ut,
 • *Rara b'avis in terris, b'nigrōque simillima b'cygno.* Juv.
 Aliquando oratio supplet locum substantivi, adjectivo in neutro genere posito : ut,
 • *Auditō b'regem Doroberniam proficisci.*

CONCOR-

CONCORDANTIA Tertia.

Relativum et Antecedens.

*The Third Concord: The Relative and the Antecedent.**

RELATIVUM cum antecedente concordat, genere, numero, et personâ: ut,

^a*Vir bonus est quis?*

^b*Qui consulta patrum, ^bqui leges jurâque servat.* Hor.

Aliquando oratio ponitur pro antecedente: ut,

^a*In tempore ad eam veni, ^bquod rerum omnium est primum.* Ter.

Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, interdum cum posteriore concordat: ut,

Homines tuentur illum ^aglobum ^bquæ ^aterra dicitur.

Cic.

* THE RELATIVE AND THE ANTECEDENT.

1. The antecedent is that substantive which is understood after the relative; and if the ellipsis be carefully filled up, there can be no difficulty in this concord: as, *Deus, qui (deus) nos creavit, cuius (dei) sumus, cui (deo) parent omnia, quem (deum) non cernimus oculis, à quo (deo) pendemus tamen, est æternus.* That God, which (God) created us, the creatures of which (God) we are, which (God) all things obey, &c. is eternal.

2. The antecedent is actually sometimes expressed in the relative clause: as, *erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.* Cass.

3. Sometimes the antecedent is elegantly expressed in the relative clause: as *populo ut placuerint, quas fecisset fabulas.* Ter. *Urbem quam statuo, vestra est.* Vir. *Fabulae* and *urbs* are understood.

4. The relative clause is often put before the antecedent clause in Latin, though it cannot in English: as, *Qui pauperes sunt, ita antiquior officio est pecunia.* Cic.

OBSERVATION common to the three Concords.

The words *homo*, a man, and *negotium*, a thing, are frequently understood in the three concords: as, *ita aiunt.* Ter. *Rari quippe boni.* Juv. *Quod honestum, id utile est.* Cic. *Non esse cupidum, pecunia est; non esse emâcum, vestigia.* Cic. *Feliciter sapit, qui alieno periculo caput.* Plaut.

Aliquando

Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur; ut,

Omnes omnia

Bona dicere, et laudare fortunas ^ameas,
^bQui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum. Ter.

Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur à verbo, aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

Gratia ab officio, ^bquod mora ^atardat, abest. Ovid.
^bCujus ^anumen adoro.

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. SUBSTANTIVA.

*The Construction of Nouns Substantive.**

QUUM duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

Crescit ^aamor ^bnummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit.
Juv.

Hic genitivus aliquando in dativum vertitur: ut,
^bUrbi ^apater est, ^burbique ^amaritus. Luc.

Adjectivum in neutro genere sine substantivo positum, aliquando genitivum postulat: ut,

^aPaululum ^bpecuniae.

* CONSTRUCTION of Nouns Substantive.

1. *Of*, the usual sign of the genitive, is sometimes a preposition: when put for *about* or *concerning*, it is rendered by *de*; for *from*, by *à*, *ab*, or *de*; for *out of*, by *è* or *ex*.

2. Nouns of matter have always *of* before them, but require *è*, *ex*, or *de* with an ablative; or are rendered by their kindred adjectives; *as*, *ensis* *è*, *ex*, *vel de ferro factus*; or *ferreus ensis*.

3. It is by ellipsis that the following phrases are read: *urbs Patavii. Vir. flumen Rheni. Vir. cui nomen est* being understood.

4. Hence, in some forms, the denominative noun may be either the nominative, genitive, or dative; as *cui nomea Iulio additur. Vir.* It might have been *Iulus*; and both by apposition: or *Iulli*, as the latter of two substantives. The first is the most elegant.

Ponitur

Ponitur interdum genitivus tantum, priore substantivo per ellipsis subauditio: ut,

Ubi ad Dianæ veneris, ito ad dextram. Ter.
Subaudi, templum.

Duo substantiva rei ejusdem in eodem casu ponantur: ut,

Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.

LAUS, vituperium, vel qualitas rei, ponitur in ablativo, etiam genitivo: ut,

Ingenui ^bvultus ^apuer, ingenuique ^bpudoris. Juv.

^aVir nullus ^bfidei.

OPUS et usus ablativum exigunt: ut,

^b *Auctoritate tuâ nobis ^aopus est.* Cic.

Pecuniam^b quid nihil sibi esset^a usus, ab iis non accepit.
Gell.

Opus autem **adjectivè** pro *necessarius* quandoque ponit
videtur: ut,

Dux ^bnobis et auctor ^aopus est. Cic.

II. *ADJECTIVA.*

The Construction of Nouns Adjective.

I. Genitivus post Adjectivum.

*The Genitive Case after the Adjective.**

ADJECTIVA, quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem significant, atque iis contraria, genitivum exi-gunt: ut,

Est natura hominum ^bnovitatis ^aavida. Plin.

Mens ^bfuturi ^apræscia.

^a*Memor*

* CONSTRUCTION of Adjectives.

GENITIVE CASE.

1. Sometimes the adjective of praise and dispraise agrees with the subject of the sentence, and the noun of praise is put in the ablative: as, *vir gravitate et prudentia excellens*. Cic.
2. Sometimes a plural neuter adjective is used singly: *spatia, ne*

^a*Memor* *esto brevis* ^b*ævi.* ^a*Immémor* ^b*beneficii.*

^a*Imperitus* ^b*rerum.* ^a*Rudis* ^b*belli.*

^a*Timidus* ^b*Deorum.* Ovid. ^a*Impavidus* ^b*sui.* Cland.
Cum plurimis aliis quæ affectionem animi denotant.

ADJECTIVA verbalia in *ax* etiam genitivum exigunt : ut,

^a*Audax* ^b*ingenii.* — *Tempus* ^a*edax* ^b*rerum.*

NOMINA partitiva, numeralia, comparativa et superlativa ; et quædam adjectiva partitivè posita, genitivum, à quo et genus mutuantur, exigunt : ut,

^a*Utrum* ^b*horum mavis accipe.*

^a*Primus* ^b*regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.*

^b*Manuum* ^a*fortior est dextra.*

^b*Digitorum medius est* ^a*longissimus.*

Sequimur te, ^a*sancte* ^b*deorum.*

Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionibus, *à*, *ab*, *de*, *è*, *ex*, *inter*, *ante* : ut,

^a*Tertius* ^b*ab* *Aened.*

^a*Solus* ^b*de* *superis.*

Deus ^b*è* *vobis* ^b*alter es.* Ovid.

^a*Primus* ^b*inter omnes.*

^a*Primus* ^b*ante omnes.*

SECUNDUS aliquando dativum exigit : ut,
Haud ^b*bulli veterum virtute* ^a*secundus.* Virg.

INTERROGATIVUM, et ejus redditivum, ejusdem casū et temporis erunt, nisi voces variae constructionis adhibentur : ut,

^a*Quarum* *rerum nulla est satietas?* ^b*Divitiarum.*

^a*Furti-ne accusas, an* ^a*homicidii?* ^b*Utroque.*

something similar being understood : as, *opaca viarum*. Vir. *Acuta belli.*
Hor.

3. Both singular and plural neuters are used adverbially : as, *dulceridens*, *suave rubens*, *torva tuens*, *acerba sonans*. Hor. Vir.

4. Sometimes the noun of partition and the partitive are put in the same case by apposition : as, *illos centeni quemque sequuntur*. Vir. *Maxima pars morem hunc homines habent.* Plaut.

Note: Comparatives speak only of two; superlatives of more.

II. Da-

II. Dativus post Adjectivum.

*The Dative Case after the Adjective.**

ADJECTIVA, quibus commodum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

Si facis ut ^bpatrī sit ^aidoneus, ^autilis ^bagris. Juv.
Turba ^agravis ^bpaci, placidaque ^ainimica ^bquieti.
 Mart.

^b*Patri ^asimilis.* Cic.

Qui color albus erat, nunc est ^acontrarius ^balbo. Ovid.

^a*Jucundus ^bamicis.* Martial.

^b*Omnibus ^asupplex.*

Est ^afinitimus ^boratori poëta.

Huc referuntur nomina ex *con* præpositione composita: ut, *contubernialis, commilito, conservus, cognatus, &c.*

Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, etiam genitivo junguntur: ut,

Quem metuis, ^apar ^bhujus erat. Lucan.

^b*Domini ^asimilis es.* Ter.

COMMUNIS, alienus, immunis, genitivo, dativo, et ablativo cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,

^a*Commune ^banimantium omnium est.* Cic.

Mors ^bomnibus est ^acommunis. Ibid.

Hoc ^bmihi tecum ^acommune est.

Non ^aaliena ^bconsiliī. Sallust.

* DATIVE CASE.

1. *Idem* among the poets governs a dative: as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti.* Hor. In prose it is followed by *qui, ac, atque: as, animus erga te idem ac [or qui or atque] fuit.* Ter. *Si personis isdem uti alii non licet.* Ter. i. e. *Personis isdem uti, quibus alii utentur.*

2. Adjectives of diversity take an ablative with a preposition: and sometimes a dative: as, *diversus ab illo, or illi.* Lilly.

3. *Alius* takes sometimes an ablative without a preposition. as, *nōne putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum.* Hor.

^a*Alienus*

* *Alienus* ^b*ambitioni.* Sen. Præf.

Non ^a*alienus* ^b*à Scaevola studiis.* Cic.

Vobis ^a*immunibus hujus*

Esse ^b*mali* *dabitur.* Ovid.

Caprificus ^b*omnibus* ^a*immunis est.* Plin.

* *Immunes* ^b*ab illis malis sumus.*

NATUS, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, cum multis aliis, interdum etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur: *ut*,

* *Natus* ^b*ad gloriam.* Cic.

* *Utilis* ^b*ad eam rem.*

VERBALIA in *bilis* accepta passivè, et participialia in *dus*, dativum postulant: *ut*,

Nulli ^a*penetrabilis* ^b*astro*

Lucus iners. Stat.

O ^b*mihi post nullos Juli* ^a*memorande sodales.* Mart.

III. Accusativus post Adjectivum.

The Accusative Case after the Adjective.

MAGNITUDINIS mensura subjicitur adjectivis in accusativo, ablativo, et genitivo: *ut*,

Turris centum ^b*pedes* ^a*alta.*

Fons ^a*latus* ^b*pedibus tribus, altus* ^b*triginta.*

Area ^a*lata* ^b*pedum denum.*

Accusativus aliquando subjicitur adjectivis, et participiis ubi præpositio *secundum* videtur subintelligi: *ut*,

* *Os* ^b*humerosque Deo* ^a*similis.* ^b*Vultum* ^a*demissus.*

IV. Ablativus post Adjectivum.

*The Ablative Case after the Adjective.**

ADJECTIVA, quæ ad copiam, egestatémve, pertinent,

* ABLATIVE CASE.

1. *Dignus* and *indignus* have sometimes an infinitive: *as*, *erat tum dignus amari.* Vir. But they are more usually followed by *qui* or *ut*: *as*, *dignus qui*, or *ut amaretur.*

2. *Quam*

uent, interdum ablativum, interdum genitivum exigunt: ut,

^a*Dives b^{equum}, ^adives picta^bvestis, et ^bauri.* Virg.
Amor, et ^bmelle, et ^bfelle, est ^afæcundissimus. Plaut.
^a*Expers ^bfraudis. ^bGratiæ ^abeatus.*

ADJECTIVA et substantiva regunt ablativum significantem causam et formam, vel modum rei: ut,

^a*Pallidus ^bird.*

^b*Nomine ^agrammaticus, ^bre ^abarbarus.*

^a*Trojanus ^borigine Cæsar.* Virg.

DIGNUS, *indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, liber;* cum adjectivis pretium significativus, ablativum exigunt: ut,

^a*Dignus es ^bodio.* Ter.

Qui gnatum haberem tali ^bingenio ^apræditum. Ibid.

^b*Oculis ^acapti fodere cubilia talpæ.* Virg.

^b*Sorte tuā ^acontentus abi.*

^b*Terrore ^aliber animus.* Liv. ^b*Gemmis ^avenale nec ^bauro.*

Horum nonnulla interdum genitivum admittunt: ut,
Magnorum ^aindignus ^bavorum. Virg.

Carmina ^adigna ^bdeæ. ^a*Extorris ^bregni.* Stat.

COMPARATIVA, cùm exponantur per quām, ablativum admittunt: ut,

^a*Vilius argentum est ^bauro, ^bvirtutibus aurum:* id est;
^b*quām aurum, ^bquām virtutes.* Hor.

2. Quām is elegantly put between two comparatives: as, *triumphus clarior quām gratior.* Liv.

3. Where quām is expressed, the noun following takes the case of the preceding noun: as, *ego callidiorē hominem vidi neminem quām Phormionem.* Ter.

4. The ablatives *solito* or *nimio* are often understood after comparatives, and then the comparatives are used in a positive sense, but with a peculiar emphasis: as, *Non ego, cùm scribo, si fortè quid aptius exit, laudari metuam.* Pers. *Longius et volvens fatorum arcana movebo.* Vir.

5. The English of *tanto* and *quanto* is generally left out, the word *the* before the comparative supplying their place: as, *the greater we are, the humbler we should be; quanto (or quo) maiores, tanto (or eo) submissius nos geramus.* Cic.

TANTO,

TANTO, quanto, hoc, eò, et quò, cum quibusdam aliis, quae mensuram excessus significant : item, aetate et natu, comparativis et superlativis sœpe junguntur : ut,

^bTanto ^apessimus omnium poëta,

^bQuanto tu ^aoptimus omnium patronus. Catull.

^bQuò ^aplus habent, ^bet ^aplus cupiunt.

^aMajor et ^amaximus ^baetate.

^aMajor et ^amaximus ^bnatu.

PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Construction of Pronouns.**

MEI, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, genitivi primitiorum, ponuntur cùm persona significatur : ut,

***Languet* ^adesiderio ^btui.**

^aPársque ^btui lateat corpore clausa meo. Ovid.

^aImago ^bnostri.

MEUS, tuus, suus, noster, vester, ponuntur, cùm actio vel possessio rei significatur : ut,

***Favet* ^adesiderio ^btuo.**

^aImago ^bnostra; id est, quam nos possidemus.

* CONSTRUCTION OF PRONOUNS

1. *Sui* and *sus* are reciprocal when the discourse is continued, concerning the same person or thing which the sentence began with; but when another person is introduced into the sentence, the demonstratives, *hic*, *is*, *ille*, *ipse*, are absolutely required: as Cato confesses that *he* has erred, *i. e.* that *he*, Cato, or *he* himself, has erred; *Cato se peccasse fateatur*. Cato thinks ill of Cæsar, and says that *he* aims at a revolution, *i. e.* that *he* (Cæsar, the other person) aims at a revolution, *de Cæsare male sentit Cato; cum studeri nouis rebus arbitratur*. Cato killed himself with *his* sword, *i. e.* with the sword of the same Cato, or *his* own sword: *suo se gladio conficit Cato*. He killed himself with *his* sword, *i. e.* with the sword of any other person, mentioned before; *illius gladio se conficit*. See Clarke's Note, *Cæs. Bell. Gall. l. 8. c. 41.*

2. But *ipse* is used sometimes for *sui* by an ellipsis.

3. *Hic* sometimes, however, signifies the former, and *ille* the latter: as, *Sic dens et virgo est: hic spe celer, illa timore*. Ov.

4. *Ille* joined to a noun, generally expresses eminence; *iste*, contempt: as, *Alexander ille magnus*. *Iustum fænum, quod poteris, ab eâ pellio*. Ter.

5. *Ipse* and *idem* are joined to any person.

Hæc

Hæc possessiva meus, tuus, suus, noster, et vester, hos genitivos post se recipiunt; ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum, cuiusque, et genitivos participiorum, qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

Dixi ^ameū ^bunius operā rempublicam esse salvam. Cic.

^aMeum ^bsoliū peccatum corrigi non potest. Ibid.

Cūm ^amea nemo

Scripta legat vulgō recitare ^btimentis. Hor.

De ^atuo ^bipsius studio conjecturam ceperis. Cic.

In ^asud ^bcuiusque laude præstantior.

^aNostrā ^bomnium memorid.

^aVestrīs ^bpaucorum respondet laudibus. Cic.

SUI et suus reciproca sunt; hoc est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiā præcessit: ut,

Petrus nimirū ^aadmiratur ^bse. ^aParcit erroribus ^bsuis.

Magnoperè ^aPetrus rogat, ne ^bse deserat.

Hæc demonstrativa, hic, iste, ille, sic distinguuntur: hic mihi proximum demonstrat; iste eum, qui apud te est; ille eum, qui ab utroque remotus est.

Hic et ille, cūm ad duo anteposita referuntur, hic plerumque ad posterius, ille ad prius refertur: ut,

*Quocunque aspicias, nihil est, nisi ^apontus et ^baer,
Nubibus ^bhic tumidus, fluctibus ^aille minax. Ovid.*

VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Verbs.

I. Nominativus post Verbum.

*The Nominative Case after the Verb.**

VERBA substantiva; ut, sum, forem, fio, existo: Verba vocandi passiva; ut, nominor, appellor, dico, vocor,

* NOMINATIVE CASE

Sometimes *sum* seems to govern different cases, upon account of a word understood: *verbis expedit esse bonas.* Cer. *Vos* is understood before case. *truncupor;*

nuncupor; et iis similia: *ut, videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eodem casus habent: *ut,*

^a*Deus b est summum b cnum.*

^a*Perpusilli b vocantur a nani.*

^a*Fides religionis nostræ a fundamentum b habetur.*

Natura a beatis

^a*Omnibus b esse dedit.*

ITEM omnia ferè verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum nominativo verbi casu, genere, et numero concordat: *ut,*

^a*Pii b orant a taciti.*

Malus a pastor b dormit a supinus.

II. Genitivus post Verbum.

*The Genitive Case after the Verb.**

SUM genitivum postulat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: *ut,*

Pecus a est b Melibæi.

^b*Adolescentis a est majores natu revereri.* Cic.

Excipiuntur hi nominativi, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humanum, bellunum*, et similia: *ut,*
^a*Non a est b meum contra auctoritatem senatus dicere.* Cic.
^b*Humanum a est irasci.*

VERBA accusandi, damnandi, monendi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant, qui crimen significat: *ut,*

* GENITIVE CASE.

1. Verba of accusing have sometimes two accusatives, especially *moneo*: *as, si id me accusas.* Plaut. *Se eos hoc moneo.* Cic.

2. *Memini*, to make mention, governs a genitive or ablative with *de*: *as, hujus rei vel de hac re memini.*

3. *Venit mihi in mentem* is elegantly used for *memini*, to remember, with this difference of construction: *as, venit mihi in mentem hæc res, hujus rei, vel de hac re.*

4. *Potior, fungor, utor*, and many others, according to the old way of writing, govern an accusative.

Qui

Qui alterum ^aaccusat ^bproibi, eum ipsum se intueri oportet. Plaut.

^bSceleris ^acondemnat generum suum. Cic.

^aAdmoneto illum pristinæ ^bfortunæ.

^bFurti ^aabsolutus est.

Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, vel cum præpositione, vel sine præpositione: ut,

Putavi ed ^bde re te esse ^aadmonendum. Cic.

Si in me iniquus es judex, ^acondemnabo eodem ego te ^bcrimine. Ibid.

UTERQUE, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo, et superlativus gradus, non nisi in ablativo id genus verbis junguntur: ut,

^aAccusat furti, an stupri? ^bUtroque, vel ^bde utroque:

^bambobus, vel ^bde ambobus: ^bneutro, vel ^bde neutro.

^bDe plurimis simul ^aaccusaris.

SATAGO, misereor, et miseresco, genitivum postulant: ut,

Is ^brerum suarum ^asatagit. Ter.

Oro, ^amiserere ^blaborum

Tantorum, ^amiserere ^banimæ non digna ferentis. Virg.

Et ^bgeneris ^amiseresco tui. Stat.

REMINISCOR, obliviscor, memini, recordor, genitivum, aut accusativum, admittunt: ut,

Datæ ^bfidei ^areminiscitur.

Proprium est stultitiae aliorum vitia cernere, ^aoblivisci ^bsuorum. Cic.

Faciam ut hujus ^bloci semper ^amemineris. Ter.

^bHæc olim ^ameminisse juvabit. Virg.

Hujus ^bmeriti in me ^arecordor. Cic.

Si ritè ^baudita ^arecordor.

POTIOR, aut genitivo, aut ablativo, jungitur: ut,

Romani ^bsignorum et armorum ^apotiti sunt. Sallust.

Egressi optatæ ^apotiuntur Troës arenæ. Virg.

III. Dativus post Verbum.

*The Dative Case after the Verb.**

OMNIA verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cui aliquid acquiritur, aut adimitur: ut,

“Mihi istic nec a-seritur, nec a-metitur. Plaut.

Quis te b-mihi casus a-ademit? Ovid.

HUIC regulæ appendent variis generis Verba.

I. Imprimis, verba significantia commodum, aut incommodum, regunt dativum: ut,

Non potes b-mihi a-commicare, nec a-incommicare.

Ex his, *juvo, laedo, delecto*, et alia quædam, accusativum exigunt: ut,

b-Fessum quies plurimum a-juvat.

II. VERBA comparandi regunt dativum: ut,

Sic b-parvis a-componere magna solebam. Virg.

Interdum verò ablativum cum præpositione *cum*; interdum accusativum cum præpositionibus *ad* et *inter*: ut,

a-Comparo Virgilium b-cum Homero.

Si b-ad eum a-comparatur nihil est.

Hæc non sunt b-inter se a-conferenda.

III. VERBA dandi et reddendi regunt dativum: ut,

Fortuna b-multis a-dat nimis, satis b-nulli. Mart.

Ingratus est, qui gratiam bene b-merenti non a-reponit.

IV. VERBA promittendi ac solvendi regunt dativum: ut,

Quæ b-tibi a-promitto, ac recipio sanctissimè esse obser-vaturum. Cic.

Æs alienum b-mihi a-numeravit. Ib.

* DATIVE CASE.

The participle *solens* is, by a Greek form of much elegance, used in the dative for *voluptati*, in this construction; as, *neque plebi militia volenti patebatur.* Sall.

V. VERBA imperandi et nuntiandi regunt dativum: ut,

*"Imperat, aut servit, collecta pecunia ^bcuique. Hor.
Quid de quoque viro, et ^bcui ^adicas, sœpe videto. Ib.*

Excipe *rego*, *guberno*, quæ accusativum habent: *temporo* et *moderor*, quæ nunc dativum, nunc accusativum habent: ut,

Luna ^aregit ^bmenses—^borbem Deus ipse ^agubernat.

"Temperat ipse ^bsibi—Sol ^atemperat ^bomnia luce.

Hic ^amoderatur ^bequos—qui non ^amoderabitur ^biræ.

VI. VERBA fidendi dativum regunt: ut,

Vacuis ^acommittere ^bvenis

Nil nisi lene decet. Hor.

VII. VERBA obsequendi et repugnandi dativum regunt: ut,

Semper ^aobtemperat pius filius ^bpatri.

Ignavis ^bprecibus fortuna ^arepugnat.

VIII. VERBA minandi et irascendi regunt dativum: ut,

^bUtrique mortem est ^aminitatus. Cic.

^bAdolescenti nihil est, quod ^asuccenseam. Ter.

IX. SUM, cum compositis, præter possum, regit dativum: ut,

Rex pius ^aest ^breipublicæ ornamenntum.

^bMihi nec ^aobest, nec ^aprodest.

Dativum fermè regunt verba composita cum his adverbii, *bene*, *satis*, *malè*; et cum his præpositionibus, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*: ut,

Dii ^btibi ^abenefaciant. Ter.

Ego meis ^bmajoribus virtute ^apræluxi. Cic.

Intempestivè qui ^boccupato ^aadluserit. Phædr.

^aConducit hoc tuæ ^blaudi. ^aConvixit ^bnobis.

^aSubolet jam ^buxori, quod ego machinor.

Iniquissimam pacem justissimo ^bbello ^aantefero. Cic.

^aPostpono ^bfamæ pecuniam.

Ea quoniam ^bnemini ^aobtrudi potest,

Itur ad me. Ter.

^aImpendet ^bomnibus periculum.

Non solum ^ainterfuit his ^brebus, sed etiam ^apræfuit.
Cic.

Non pauca ex his mutant dativum aliquoties in alium casum: ut,

^aPræstat ingenio alius ^balium. Quint.

Est pro habeo regit dativum: ut,

^aEst ^bmihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.
Virg.

Huic simile est *suppetit*: ut,

Pauper enim non est, ^bcui rerum ^asuppetit usus. Hor.

Sum, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum: ut,

^aExitio ^best avidis mare ^bnautis. Hor.

Speras ^btibi ^blaudi ^afore, quod ^bmihi ^bvitio ^avertis?

*Est ubi hic dativus, *tibi*, aut *sibi*, aut etiam *mihi*, elegantiæ causâ additur: ut,*

Suo ^bsibi gladio hunc ^ajugulo. Ter.

IV. Accusativus post Verbum.

*The Accusative case after the Verb.**

Verba transitiva cujuscunque generis, sive activi, sive deponentis, sive communis, exigunt accusativum: ut,

^bPercontatorem ^afugito, nam garrulus idem est. Hor.

* ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. Verbs transitive, governing other cases, govern also an accusative of the object, *i. e.* of the noun which admits not a sign before it: *as, sic parvis compонere magna solebam.* Virg. *Mortem ei minitatur.* Cic.

2. Verbs of asking take often an ablative of the person: *as, venidamque ore-mus ab ipso.* Virg. And verbs of clothing have this variety, *induo te tunicā, vel tibi tunicam.*

3. The poets sometimes use a dative, instead of an accusative with a preposition, after verbs of motion: *as, it clamor calo.* Virg.

Aper

Aper ^bagros ^adepopulatur.

Imprimis ^avenerare ^bdeos.

VERBA neutra accusativum habent cognatae significatio-
nis: ut,

Duram ^aservit ^bservitutem.

Sunt quæ figuratè accusativum habent: ut,
Nec vox ^bhominem ^asonat, ó dea certé! Virg.

VERBA rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi, ferè du-
plicem regunt accusativum: ut,

Tu modò ^aposce ^bdeos ^bveniam. Virg.

Dedocebo ^bte istos ^bmores.

Ridiculum est ^bte istuc ^bme ^aadmonere. Ter.

^aInduit ^bse ^bcalceos, quos priùs exuerat.

^bEa ne ^bme ^acelet, consuefeci filium. Ter.

Hujusmodi verba etiam in passivâ voce accusativum
post se habent: ut,

^aPosceris ^bexta bovis.

NOMINA appellativa adduntur ferè cum præpositione
verbis quæ denotant motum: ut,

^bAd templum Palladis ^aibant.

V. Ablativus post Verbum.

*The Ablative case after the Verb.**

QUODVIS verbum admittit ablativum significantem
instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis: ut,

Hi ^bjaculis, illi certant ^adefendere ^bsaxis. Virg.

Vehe-

* ABLATIVE CASE.

1. The instrument never admits a preposition: the cause and manner
often do, and that too with great propriety; as, *præ irâ, magnâ cum celeri-
tate, magnâ de causâ.*

2. But *æstimo* sometimes governs these ablatives, *magnō, permagnō,
parvo, nihilo*: as, *tu ista permagnō æstimas.* Cic.

3. *Valeo* sometimes governs an accusative: as, *denos æris valebant.* Varro.

The

Vehementer virū ^aexcanduit.

Mirū ^bceleritate rem ^aperegit.

Quibusdam verbis subjicitur nomen pretii in ablativo casu: ut,

Teruncio, seu vitiosā ^bnuce non ^aemerim.

Multorum ^bsanguine ac ^bvulneribus ea Pænis victoria ^astetit. Liv.

VILI, paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo, per se sæpe pōnuntur, subauditā voce pretio: ut,

^bVili ^avenit triticum.

Excipluntur hi genitivi sine substantivis positi: *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quanticunque, &c.*; ut,

^bTanti ^aeris aliis, ^bquanti tibi ^afueris. Cic.

FLOCCI, nauci, nihilī, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii, verbis æstimandi peculiariter adduntur: ut,

Ego illum ^bflocci ^apendo, nec ^bhujus ^afacio, qui me ^bpili ^aestimat.

VERBA abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur: ut,

^bAmore ^aabundus, Antipho. Ter.

The ablative is most common: as, *valet sestertiis vicenis. Pro nihilo habere* is a phrase of common use.

4. The ablative after *muto* is the thing taken in exchange; as, *muto librum pecunia: but* by an hypallage, which Horace is fond of, it may be *muto pecuniam libro.*

5. The English signs of the ablative case absolute are, *having, being*, a participle in *ing*, or the particles *when, after, since, &c.* As, *having* made this speech, *when* he had made this speech, or, this speech *being* made, he dismissed the assembly, *hāc habitū oratione, consilium dimisit.* Cæs.

6. Deponents with these signs commonly agree with the nominative of the sentence in the participle perfect: as, *cohortatus suos, prælium commisit.* Cæs.

7. Sometimes the English conjunction *and* being left out, a clause is rendered by the ablative case absolute: as, he made the signal, *and* attacked the enemy: *signo dato, hostes invaserunt.*

8. The participle *existente* is often understood: as, *me duce. Diis invitatis. Bruto consule.*

9. The preposition is sometimes omitted by poetic licence before the ablative: as, *scriberis Vario, Maonii carminis aelite.* Hor.

Sylla omnes suos bexplicavit. Sall.

Te quibus b>mendacis homines levissimi a>onerarunt?

Cic.

Te hoc b>crimine a>expedi. Ter.

Ex quibus quædam nonnunquam genitivum regunt: ut,

a>Implentur veteris b>Bacchi, pinguisque b>ferinæ. Virg.

Quasi tu hujus a>indigeas b>patris. Ter.

FUNGOR, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communico,
supersedeo, ablativo junguntur: ut,

*Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiae a>fungatur
b>officii. Cic.*

Optimum est alieni a>frui b>insaniæ.

In re mald, b>animo si bono a>utare, juvat.

a>Vescor b>carnibus.

Haud equidem tali me a>dignor b>honore. Virg.

Diruit, ædificat, a>mutat quadrata b>rotundis. Hor.

a>Communicabo te b>mensæ med.

Verborum b>multitudine a>supersedendum est.

MEREOR, cum adverbiis, bene, male, melius, pejus,
optimè, pessimè, ablativo jungitur cum præpositione de:
ut,

b>De me nunquam b>bene meritus est.

QUÆDAM accipiendi, distandi, et auferendi verba,
aliquando dativo junguntur: ut,

Paulum sepultæ a>distat b>inertiae

Celata virtus. Hor.

a>Eripe te b>moræ. Ibid.

QUIBUSLIBET verbis additur ablativus absolutè sump-
tus: ut,

b>Imperante b>Augusto, a>natus est Christus; b>imperante

b>Tiberio, a>crucifixus.

b>Me b>duce tutus a>eris. Ovid.

VERBIS quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ,
et poëticè accusativus: ut,

a>Egrotat b>animo magis quam b>corpore.

a>Candet b>dentes. a>Rubet b>capillos.

Quædam usurpantur etiam cum genitivo: ut,
***Absurdè facis, qui ^aangas te ^banimi.* Plaut.**

VERBA PASSIVA.

Verbs Passive.

PASSIVIS additur ablativus agentis, sed antecedente a vèl ab præpositione: et interdum datus: ut,
 • *Laudatur ^bab his, ^aculpatur ^bab illis.* Hor.
Honesta bonis ^bviris, non occulta, ^aquæruntur.
 Cæteri casus manent in passivis, qui fuerunt activorum: ut,
 • *Accusaris à me ^bfurti. ^aHabeberis ^bbludibrio.*
 • *Dedoceberis à me istos ^bmores. ^aPrivaberis ^bmagistratu.*

VAPUO, *veneo, liceo, exulo, fio*, neutro-passiva, passivam constructionem habent: ut,
 • *A præceptore ^bvapulabis.*
Malo à civi spoliari quād ^bab hoste ^avenire.
Virtus parvo pretio ^alicet ^bab omnibus.
Cur ^bà convivantibus ^aexulat philosophia?
Quid ^afiet ^bab illo?

VERBA INFINITA.

*Verbs of the Infinitive Mood.**

VERBIS quibusdam, participiis, et adjectivis, adduntur verba infinita, et poëticè substantivis: ut,
 • *Dicere quæ puduit, ^bscribere ^ajussit amor.* Ovid.
Jussus ^bconfundere fædus. Virg.
Erat tum ^adignus ^bamari. Ibid.
Tempus ^babire tibi.

Ponuntur

* VERBS of the Infinitive Mood.

1. The English infinitive, after any forms of the verb *to be*, is rendered always by a Latin future participle; the active infinitive by the future in *rus*, the passive infinitive by the future in *dus*; as, *I am to teach, sum docendus*. *I am to be taught, sum docendus.*

2. The

Ponuntur interdum sola, per ellipsis, verba infinita: ut,

Hinc b' spargere voces

In vulgum ambiguas, et b' quærere conscius arma. Virg.

Hic subauditur incipiebat.

GERUNDIA ET SUPINA.

*Gerunds and Supines.**

GERUNDIA et SUPINA regunt casus suorum verborum: ut,

*Efferor studio b' patres vestros *videndi.* Cic.

** Utendum est b' aetate: cito pede præterit aetas.* Ovid.

** Scitatum b' oracula Phœbi*

Mittimus. Virg.

1. GERUNDIA.

I. Gerunds.

GERUNDIA in *di* eandem cum genitivis constructionem habent, et pendent à quibusdam tum substantivis tum adjectivis: ut,

*Cecropias innatus apes *amor urget b' habendi.* Virg.

*Aeneas celsa in puppi jam *certus b' eundi.* Ibid.

GERUNDIA in *do*, eandem cum ablativis; et Gerundia in *dum*, cum accusativis, constructionem obtinent: ut,
*Scribendi ratio conjuncta *cum b' loquendo est.* Quint.

2. The English infinitive signifying *to the end that*, has various constructions; as, he sent trusty men to fetch the fleet, *certos misit, qui (ut) classem arcesserent: classem arcessendi causâ, classis arcessendæ causâ, ad classem arcessendam, arcessitum classem, classem arcessituros.*

* GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

1. The gerund in *di* has sometimes a genitive plural after it; as, *facultas agrorum suis latronibus condonandi.* Cic. *Date crescendi copiam novarum.* Ter.

2. The poets use the infinitive sometimes for the gerund: as, *studium quibus arva tueri.* Virg.

3. Gerunds in *do* are sometimes datives: as, *non est solvendo.* Cic. *aptus* is understood.

4. The poets use an infinitive for the gerund in *dum*, by a Greek phrase: as, *Loricam donat—habere viro.* Virg. *for habendam.*

5. Also for the supine in *um*; as, *pecus egit altos visere montes.* Hor.

Altum

*Alitur vitium, vivitque, tegendo. Virg.
Locus ad agendum amplissimus. Cicero.*

Cùm significatur necessitas, ponuntur gerundia in *dum* citra præpositionem, addito verbo *est*: ut,

**Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Juv.
Vigilandum est ei, qui cupid vincere.

Vertuntur etiam gerundia in nomina adjectiva: ut,
Ad accusandos homines duci præmio proximum latrocínio est.

II. SUPINA.

II. *Supines.*

SUPINUM in *um* activè significat, et sequitur verbum, aut participium, significans motum ad locum: ut,

**Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ. Ovid.
Milites sunt missi speculatum arcem.*

SUPINUM in *u* passivè significat, et sequitur nomina adjectiva: ut,

Quod factu fædum est, idem est et dictu turpe.



DE TEMPORE ET LOCO.

Nouns of Time and Place.

I. TEMPUS. *Time.*

QUÆ significant partem temporis, in ablativo frequentiùs ponuntur: ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. Plin.

QUÆ autem durationem temporis significant, in accusativo ferè ponuntur: ut,

*Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos. Virg.
Dicimus etiam: In paucis diebus. De die. De nocte.*

Promitto in diem. Commodo in mensem.

Annos ad quinquaginta natus. Per tres annos studui.

Puer id ætatis. Non plus triduum, aut, triduo.

Tertio, vel, ad tertium calendaras, vel, calendarum.

II. SPATIUM LOCI.

The Space of a Place.

SPATIUM loci in accusativo ponitur; interdum et in ablativo: ut,

Jam mille ^bpassus ^aprocesseram.

Abest ab urbe quingentis ^bmillibus passuum.

Item, *Abest bidui*: ubi intelligitur ^bspatium vel ^bspatio, ^bitinere vel iter.

III. NOMINA LOCORUM.

*The Names of Places.**

OMNE verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis, in quo fit actio; modò primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit: ut,

Quid ^bRomæ ^afaciam? mentiri nescio. Juv.

Hi genitivi *humi*, *domi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, proprietum sequuntur formam: ut,

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi ^aest consilium ^bdomi. Cic.

Und semper ^bmilitiæ, et ^bdomi ^afutimus. Ter.

Verùm si oppidi nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiae declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Colchus, an Assyrus; ^bThebis ^anutritus, an ^bArgis.

Hor.

Romæ Tibur ^aamem ventosus, ^bTibure Romam. Hor.

VERBIS significantibus motum ad locum ferè additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

Concessi ^bCantabrigiam ad capiendum ingenii cultum.

* The NAMES OF PLACES.

1. Known by answering the question *where?* is the Genitive.
2. Known by answering the question *whither?* is the Accusative.
3. Towns in *e* of the first declension require *urbs* expressed: as, *in urbe Mytilenes habitat*.
4. The names of people and countries generally have prepositions pre-fixed: as, *in Siciliâ discessit*. *In Galliam proficiscitur*. But the poets sometimes omit the preposition: as, *Sitientes ibimus Afros. Italiam venit. Virg. Countries too are used like nouns in the genitive by poetic licence: as, non est aptus equis Ithaca locus.* Hor.
5. The genitive *domi* admits no adjectives but *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, *aliena*. *Domos* is also used in the accusative plural without the preposition, *as domum* in the singular.

Ad hunc modum utimur *domus* et *rus* : ut,

^a*Ite*^b*domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite, capellæ.* Virg.
Ego ^b*rus* ^a*ibo.*

VERBIS significantibus motum à loco ferè additur nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione : ut,
Nisi antè^b*Romd*^a*profectus essem, nunc eam relinqueres.*

VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

*Verbs Impersonal.**

IMPERSONALIA nominativum non habent : ut,

^a*Juvat ire sub umbras.*

Haec impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur, præter hos ablativos fœmininos, *med*, *tud*, *sud*, *nostrd*, *vestrd*, et *cujd* : ut,

^a*Interest* ^b*magistratūs tueri bonos, animadvertere in malos.*

^b*Tud* ^a*refert te ipsum nōsse.*

Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem* : ut,

^b*Tanti* ^a*refert honesta agere.*

DATIVUM postulant impersonalia acquisitivè posita : quæ autem transitivè ponuntur, accusativum : ut,

A Deo ^b*nobis* ^a*benefit.*

^b*Me* ^a*juvat ire per altum.*

His verò, *attinet, pertinet, spectat, propriè additūr* præpositio *ad* : ut,

Me vis dicere quod ^b*ad te* ^a*attinet.* Ter.

^a*Spectat* ^b*ad omnes bene vivere.*

His impersonalibus subjicitur accusativus cum ge-

* VERBS IMPERSONAL.

1. *Capit, incipit, desinit, debet, solet, potest, joined to impersonals, become impersonals themselves : as, Tot res circumvallant, unde emergere non potest.* Ter. *i. e. à nobis, for emergere non possumus.*

2. *Decet* governs sometimes a dative case, and *oportet* a subjunctive mood with *ut* expressed or understood : as, *ita nobis decet.* Ter. *Valeat possessor oportet, si comportatis rebus bene cogitat uti.* Hor.

nitivo,

nitivo, *pœnitet*, *tædet*, *miseret*, *miserescit*, *pudet*, *piget* ;
ut,

*Si ad centesimum vixisset annum, ^csenectutis ^bcum
suæ non ^apœniteret.* Cic.

^aMiseret ^bme ^ctui.

VERBUM impersonale passivæ vocis pro singulis personis utriusque numeri eleganter accipi potest : ut,

^aStatur ; id est, *sto*, *stas*, *stat*, *stamus*, *statis*, *stant* ;
videlicet ex vi adjuncti casus : ut, *^aStatur ^bà me*, id est,
sto : *^aStatur ^bab illis*, id est, *stant*.

PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Participles.

PARTICIPIA regunt casus verborum à quibus derivantur : ut,

*Duplices ^atendens ad sidera ^bpalmas,
Talia voce refert.* Virg.

PARTICIPIIS passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *dus* : ut,

Magnus civis obiit, et ^aformidatus ^bOthoni.

Restat Chremes, qui ^bmihi ^aexorandus est. Ter.

PARTICIPIA, cùm fiunt nomina, genitivum exigunt : ut,

^bAlieni ^aappetens, ^bsui ^aprofusus. Sall.

EXOSUS, perosus, pertæsus, activè significantia, accusativum exigunt : ut,

Astronomus ^aexosus ad unam ^bmulieres.

Inmundam ^bsegnitatem ^aperosæ.

^aPertæsus ^bignaviam suam. Suet.

EXOSUS et perosus, passivè significantia, cum dativo leguntur : ut,

^aExosus ^bDeo et ^bsanctis.

Germani ^bRomanis ^aperosi sunt.

NATUS, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus, ablativum exigunt ; et sæpe cum præpositione : ut,

^aBona bonis ^bprognata ^bparentibus.

^aSate ^bsanguine divum ! Virg.

Quo ^bsanguine ^acrevis. Ib.

Venus ^borta ^amari mare praesidat eunti. Ovid.

✓Terrā ^aeditus.

*Edita ^bde magno staminare nymphæ fui.

ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Adverbs.

Ex et ecce, demonstrandi adverbia nominativo frequentius junguntur, accusativo rarius: ut,

*En ^bPriamus. Virg.

*Ecce tibi ^bstatus noster. Cic.

—En quatuor ^baras:

*Ecce ^bduas tibi, Dæphni, da quoque ^baltaria Phæbo.
Virg.

Ex et ecce, exprobrandi, soli accusativo junguntur: ut,

*En ^banimum et ^bmentem. Juv.

*Ecce autem ^balterum. Ter.

QUÆDAM adverbia loci, temporis, et quantitatis, genitivum admittunt.

1. LOCI; ut, ubi, ubinam, nusquam, eò, longè, quò, ubinis, huccine, &c.: ut,

*Ubi ^bgentium?

*Nusquam ^bloci invenitur.

*Eò ^bimpudentiæ ventum est.

*Quò ^bterrarum abiit?

2. TEMPORIS;* ut, nunc, tunc, tum, interea, pridie, postridie, &c.: ut,

Nihil ^atunc ^btemporis ampliâs, quâm flere, poteram.

*Pridie ejus ^bdiei pugnam inierunt.

*Pridie ^bcalendarum, vel calendaras.

3. QUANTITATIS; ut, parùm, satis, abundè, &c.: ut,

*Satis beloquentiæ, ^bsapientiæ ^aparùm. Sall.

*Abundè ^bfabularum audivimus.

* CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS OF TIME.

But we use *Calendas*, *Nonæ*, and *Idus*, in the accusative (*ante* being understood) rather than in the genitive, after *pridie*, *tertio*, *quarto*, and other *numerical* adverbs.

QUÆDAM

QUÆDAM casus admittunt nominum, unde dedueta sunt: ut,

^b*Sibi ^ainutiliter vivit.*

^a*Proximè ^bHispaniam Mauri sunt.* Sall.

^a*Meliàs vel ^boptimè ^aomnium.* Cie.

^a*Ampliùs ^bopinione morabatur.* Sall.

ADVERBIA diversitatis, *aliter, secùs*; et illa duo, *antè, pòst*, ablativo non raro junguntur: ut,

^b*Multo ^aaliter.* ^b*Paulo ^asecùs.*

^b*Multo ^aantè.* ^b*Paulo ^apòst.*

Longo ^apòst ^btempore venit. Virg.

INSTAR et *ergò*, adverbialiter sumpta, genitivum post se habent: ut,

^a*Instar ^bmontis equum divinâ Palladis arte
ædificant.* Virg.

Donari ^bvirtutis ^aergò. Cic.

CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Construction of Conjunctions.**

CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt: ut,

Socrates docuit ^aXenophontem ^bet ^aPlatonem.

Recto ^astat corpore, ^bdespicitque terras.

Nec ^bscribit, ^anec ^blegit.

Nisi variae constructionis ratio aliud poseat: ut,

Emi librum ^acentussi ^bet ^apluris.

Vixi

* CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The conjunctions, *autem, verò, enim, quoque*, and the adverb *qui dem*, stand not first in a sentence; *etenim, sed, ergo, igitur, itaque*, first or second.

2. A conjunction is often put before the word that stands first in connexion, for the sake of emphasis: as, *montésque feri sylváque loquuntur.* Vir.

3. *Cùm* and *tum*, or *tum* repeated, are so used to give emphasis to the latter word in connexion; as *tusuria cùm omni etati turpis, tum fadissima est senectuti.* Cic.

4. Two negatives sometimes affirm, after the Greek manner; *nulla neque amnem libavis quadrupes.* Vir.

Con-

Vixi ^aRome ^bet ^aVenetius.

Nisi me ^alactices amantem, ^bet falso spe ^aproduceres.

*Quam sepe intelligitur post amplius, plus, et minus :
ut,*

^aAmplius sunt ^bsex menses. CIC.

Paulo ^aplus ^btrecenta vehicula sunt amissa. LIV.

Nunquam nix ^aminus ^bquatuor pedes alta jacuit. LIV.

CONJUNCTIONS and ADVERBS governing ;

1. The Subjunctive ;

An, ne, nam, indefinitives

Cum, since, or because

Dum, provided that

Denmodo, provided that

Licit, although

Modo, provided that

Ne, lest

O si, I wish

Quia, to the end that

Quam, since, or because

Quia, for ut non, quid non, quod minus

Quippe cum, seeing that

Si, although

Ultimes, I wish

Ut, I wish, and although

*Ut, that, or, to the end that, or the
final cause*

*Ut, for ne non, after verbs of fear-
ing*

Utpote cum, seeing that

2. Indicative ;

An, ne, nam, interrogatives

Cum, both, followed by tam, and

Dum, } whilst, or as long as

Donec, } whilst, or as long as

Postquam, } after that

Posteaquam, } after that

Quia for cur non ? why not ?

Quandoquidem, since

Quoniam, since

Quippe, because

Tam, and, answered by cum

*Ut, after that, as, and how ! in
admiration.*

Note, ne indefinite and interrogative is known from ne, lest, or not, by
being put after the word it governs.

3. A Subjunctive, if used indefinitely ; or an Indicative, if used positively :

Antequam, before

Ceu, as if

Cum, when, Adv. of time

Donec, until

Dum, until

Etsi, } although

Etiamsi, } although

Haud secus ac si, as if

Ni, nisi, unless

Perinde quasi, } as if

Perinde ac si, as if

Priusquam, before

Quamquam, although

Quamvis, although

Quasi, as if

Quando, when, Adv. of time

Quoad, as long as, so far as

Quod, that

Quia, because

Quippe qui, as being one who

Quoniam, when, Adv. of time

Si, if

Sin, but if

Siquidem, for as much

*Simul, simul ac, simul atque, simul
ut, as soon as*

Tanquam, as if

Tametsi, although

Ubi, as soon as

Utpote qui, as being one who

QUIBUS

QUIBUS verborum modis quædam congruant adverbia
et conjunctiones.

NE, an, num, dubitativè aut indefinitè posita, sub-
junctivo junguntur: ut,

Nihil refert ^bfecerisne ^aan persuaseris.

Vise, ^anum ^bredierit.

DUM, pro dummodo et quousque, subjunctivum postu-
lat: ut,

**Dum ^bproxim tibi.*

Tertia ^adum regnante ^bviderit æstas.

QUI, causam significans, subjunctivum exigit: ut,
Stultus es ^aqui huic ^bcredas.

UT, pro postquam, sicut, et quomodo, indicativo jun-
gitur: cùm autem quanquam, utpote, vel finalem cau-
sam denotat, subjunctivo: ut,

**Ut ^bsumus in Ponto, ter frigore constituit Ister.* Ovid.

**Ut tute ^bes, ita omnes censes esse.* Plaut.

**Ut omnia ^bcontingant, quæ volo, levari non possum.*
Cic.

Non est tibi fidendum, ^aut qui toties ^befelleris.

Te oro, Dave, ^aut ^bredeat jam in viam. Ter.

Omnes denique voces indefinitè positæ, quales sunt
quis, quantus, quotus, &c. subjunctivum postulant: ut,

**Cui ^bscribam video.* Cicero.

^aQuantus

In clypeum ^bassurgat, ^aquo turbine ^btorqueat hastam.
Virg.

PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Construction of Prepositions.**

PRÆPOSITIO subaudita interdum facit ut addatur
ablativus: ut,

Habeo te ^alqco parentis, id est, ^ain loco.

PRÆPOSITIONE

* CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. *Cum* is put after *me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quo, &c.* as *mecum.*

2. *In* governs an accusative signifying *into, as in Cæliam; towards, in*

Teatros

PRÆPOSITIO in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra compositionem regebat: ut,

^a*Detrudunt naves scopulo.* Virg.

^a*Prætero te insalutatum.*

VERBA composita cum *à*, *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *è*, *ex*, *in*, nonnunquam repetunt easdem præpositiones cum suo *casu extra compositionem*, idque eleganter: ut,

^a*Abstinuerunt à vino.*

IN pro *erga*, *contra*, *ad*, et *supra*, accusativum exigit: ut,

Accipit in Teucros animum, mentemque benignam.
Virg.

^a*In omoda publica peccam.*

^a*In regnum quæritur hæres.*

Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis.

SUB, cùm ad tempus refertur, accusativo ferè jungitur: ut,

^a*Sub idem tempus; i. e. circa, vel, per idem tempus.*
Liv.

SUPER, pro *ultra*, accusativo; pro *de*, ablativo apponitur: ut,

^a*Super et Garamantas, et Indos*
Proferet imperium.

Multa super Priamorogitans, super Hectorē multa.

TENUS ablativo et singulari et plurali jungitur: ut

^a*Pube tenus.* ^b*Pectoribus tenus.* Ovid.

Teucros animus; against, in hostem tendit; over, in proprios greges imperium; for, in regnum quæritur hæres; and in distributions, as duodenā in singulos homines fugera divisiit. Liv. *In horas.* Vir.

3. *In* governs an ablative signifying *in*, as in *Angliā*; among, *in amicis te habeo*; on, *in saxo sede*.

4. *Super* governs an accusative signifying *beyond*; *super Garamantas et Indos*; besides, *super gratiam suam*: among, or, during, *super canam*.

5. *Super* governs an ablative signifying *in* or *on*; as *super arbore residet*; concerning, *super Hectorē rogitans*.

6. *Sub* governs an accusative signifying *to*, as *sub nubila fugit*; about; as *sub noctem*, *sub cænam*; it governs an ablative signifying *under*, as *sub monte consedit*; and *in*, as *sub nocte silenti*.

7. *Tenus* and *versus* are always set after their case; *penè* before or after.

At

At genitivo tantum plurali, et semper casum suum sequitur: ut,
^b*Crurum tenuis.* Virg.

INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Interjections.

INTERJECTIONES non raro sine casu ponuntur: ut,

Spem gregis, ah! silice in nudâ connixa reliquit. Virg.
Quæ, malum, dementia!

O, exclamantis, nominativo, accusativo, et vocativo, jungitur: ut,

^a*O festus dies hominis!* Ter.

^a*O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona nōrint,*

^b*Agricolas!* Virg.

^a*O formose puer! nimium ne crede colori.* Ib.

Heu et proh, nunc nominativo, nunc accusativo, junguntur: ut,

^a*Heu pietas, heu prisca fides.* Virg.

^a*Heu stirpem invisam.* Ib.

^a*Proh Jupiter, tu, homo, adigis me ad insaniam.* Ter.

^a*Proh deum atque hominum fidem.*

Item vocat. ^a*Proh sancte Jupiter!* Cic.

Hei et vœ dativo junguntur: ut,

^a*Hei mihi, quid nullis amor est medicabilis herbis.*

Ovid.

^a*Vœ misero mihi, quantâ de spe decidi!* Ter.

PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

Dividitur Prosodia in tres partes, *Tonum*, *Spiritum*, et *Tempus*.

Hoc loco visum est nobis de *Tempore* tantum tractare.

TEMPUS est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur ; ut, *Dōmīnūs*. Longum autem sic ; ut, *cōtrā*.

Pes duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est ex certâ Temporum observatione.

Spondæus est dissyllabus : ut, *virtūs*.

Dactylus est trisyllabus : ut, *scribērē*.

SCANSIO est legitima versus in singulos pedes commensuratio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*, et *Cæsura*.

I. *Synalæpha* est elisio vocalis in fine dictionis, ante alteram in initio sequentis : ut,

Sērā nīmīs vīt̄ ēst̄ crāstīnā, vīv̄ hōdīē. Mart.
pro *vita*, *vive*.

At *heu* et *ō* nunquam intercipiuntur.

II. *Ecthlipsis* est quoties *m* cum suâ vocali perimitur, proximâ dictione à vocali exorsâ : ut,

Mōnstr̄ hōrrēnd̄ īfōrm̄ īngēns, cūl lūmēn ādēmp-tūm. Virg.

pro *monstrum horrendum informe*.

III. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio : ut,

Sēu lēntō fūrēnt̄ ālveārīā vīmīnē tēxtā. Virg.
quasi scriptum esset *alvaria*.

IV. *Diæresis* est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ dissectâ fiunt duæ : ut,

Dēbūcrānt̄ fūsōs ēvōlūssē sūōs. Ov. Ep.
~~anūcēsse~~ pro *evolvisse*.

V. *Cæsura*

V. *Cæsura* est, cùm post pedem absolutum syllaba brevis in fine dictionis extenditur: ut,

Pectōribūs īnhāns spīrāntiā cōnsūlīt ēxtā. Virg.

DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.*

VERSUS heroicus, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat ex sex pedibus; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondæum peculiariter sibi vindicat; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus: ut,

Tītyrē tū pātūlē rēcūbāns sūb tēgmīnē fāgī. Virg.

Reperitur aliquando spondæus etiam in quinto loco: ut,

Cārā Dēfūm sōbōlēs, māgnūm Jōvīs incrēmēntūm. Virg.

Ultima cūjuscunque versūs syllabā habetur communis.

VERSUS

* The following account of the different kinds of FEET, and the varieties of Verse into which they enter, will be found a very necessary supplement to the ETON PROSODY.

The feet in common use are,

The Spondee; as *virtūs*.

Dactyle: as *scribērē*.

Pyrrhīpus; as *dēūs*.

Tribrachys; as *dōmīnūs*.

Trochee; as *pānīs*.

Anapest; as *pītās*.

Iambus; as *āmāns*.

I. AN HEXAMETER VERSE.

An Hexameter verse consists of six feet, the first four either dactyles or spondees, the fifth a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee: as,

Tītyrē tū pātū lē rēcū bāns sūb tēgmīnē fāgī. Vir.

Sometimes a spondee is put in the fifth place; and then the verse is called a Spondiac: as,

Cārā dē tūm sōbō lēs, māg nūm Jōvīs incrē mēntūm. Vir.

II. A PENTAMETER.

A Pentameter consists of two members, the first consisting of two feet, dactyles or spondees, and a long syllable; the second of two dactyles, and a common syllable; as,

Rēs ēst | sōllīcī tī | plēnā tī | mōrīs ā | mōr. ◦v.

* * The last syllable of every verse is accounted common.

III. A PHALEUCIAN, or HENDECASYLLABUS.

A Phaleucian consists of a spondee, dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Hic ēst | quēm lēgīs tīlē | quēm rē | quīrīs. Mart.

IV. *ad*

VERSUS Elegiacus, qui et *Pentametri* nomen habet, è duplii constat penthemimeri: quarum prior duos pedes, dactylicos, spondiacos, vel alterutros comprehendit, cum syllabâ longâ: altera etiam duos pedes, sed omnino dactylicos, cum syllabâ item longâ: ut,

Rēs ēst sōlīcūtī plēnā tīmōrūs īmōr. Ovid. Epist.

PRIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplice in eâdem dictione, ubique positione longa est: ut *vēntus*, *āxis*, *patrīzo*, *cūjus*. II. Quâd

IV. An IAMBIC.

An Iambic verse is either pure, or mixed; the pure consists only of Iambic feet.

The mixed Iambic admits in the odd places (i. e. 1st, 3d, 5th,) a tribrachys, spondee, dactyle, or anapest; and in the even places (2d and 4th) sometimes a tribrachys.

An Iambic verse of four feet is called a Dimeter; of six, a Trimeter.

Pure { *Trim.* Sūls | ēt ip | sā Rō | mā vī | rībūs | rūt.

Dim. īnār | sīt ī | stūs | stūs | sūs. Hor.

Impure { *Trim.* Xt ī | pēdo | rūm quīc | quīd īa | cōlō | rēgīt.

Dim. Tērīs | ēt hū | mānūm | gēnūs. Hor.

||†|| The comic poets, and Phædrus, use any of the fore-mentioned feet in the even and odd places indifferently, the sixth being excepted, which is always an Iambus.

V. A SCAZON.

The Scazon is the same with the Iambic, except that it has always an Iambus in the fifth place, and a Spondee in the sixth: as,

Cūr ī | theā | trūm Cātō | sēvē | rē vē | nīstī. Mart.

VI. A SAPPHIC.

A Sapphic verse consists of a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two troches; and after every third verse an Adonic (a dactyle and spondee) is used to complete the stanza or strophe: as,

Întē | gēr vī | tē scēlē | risquē | pūrtīs
Nōn ē | gēt Mau | rī jāctū | lis nēc | arēū:
Nēc vē | mēnā | lis grāvī | da sā | gītīs,
Fūscē, phā | rētrā. Hor.

VII. An ASCLEPIAD.

An Asclepiad verse consists of a spondee, dactyle, long syllable, and then two dactyles: as,

Mēcē | nās atā | vis | cētē | rēgībūs. Hor.

VIII. A

II. Quod si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis precedens etiam positione longa erit: ut,

Majör sum quam cū pōssit fōrtūnā nōcēre;
Syllabæ *yor, sum, quam, et sit*, positione longæ sunt.

III. At si prior dictio in vocalem brevem exeat, sequente à duabus consonantibus incipiente, interdum, sed rariūs, producitur: ut,

Occūltā spōlīa, ēt plūrēs dē pācē trūmphos. Juv.

IV. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquidā, communis redditur: ut *pātris, volūcris*. Longa verò non mutatur: ut *arātrum, simulāchrūm*.

VIII. A GLYCONIAN.

A Glyconian verse consists of a spondee and two dactyles; as,
Sic tē | dīvā pō | tēns Cýpri. Hor.

IX. A PHEROCRATIAN.

A Pherocratian verse consists of a spondee, dactyle, and a spondee; as,
Grātō | Pyrrhā sūb | antrō. Hor.

X. An ARCHILOCHIAN

An Archilochian is either trochaic or iambic.

The trochaic Archilochian consists of four feet, either dactyles or spondees, and three trochees; as,

Sōlvitār | acris hȳ | ēms grā | tā vīcē | vērīs | et Fā | vōni. Hor.

The iambic Archilochian has in the first and third places a spondee, sometimes in the first an iambus; but never in the third; in the second and fourth always an iambus, with a cæsura, or long syllable; as,

Lēnēs | quē sūb | nūctēm | sūstūr | ri. Hor.

XI. An ALCAIC.

An Alcaic verse is of two sorts, the major and minor.

The Alcaic major consists of a spondee, sometimes an iambus, in the first place, then an iambus and long syllable, with two dactyles.

The Alcaic minor consists of two dactyles and two trochees.

They take the Archilochian iambic in the the third place, to complete the stanza: as,

Vides | ut al | ta | stet nīve | cāndīmūm

Sorāc | tē nēc | jām | sūstīnē | ānt önus

Sylvās | labō | rāntēs | gelū | que

Flūmina | cōsūlītē | rint a | cīlto. Hor.

VOCALIS

VOCALIS ante alteram in eadem dictione ubique brevis est: ut *D̄eūs, m̄eūs, t̄ūs, p̄iūs*.

1. Excipias genitivos in *ius*, secundam pronominis formam habentes: ut, *unius, illius, &c.* Ubi *i* communis reperitur, licet in *alterius* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi et dativi quintae declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit: ut *faciei*: alioqui non; ut, *r̄ei, sp̄ei, fid̄ei*.

Fi etiam in *fio* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut *fierem, fieri*.

Omnia jām fiūnt fieri quā possē nēgābam.

Dius primam syllabam habet longam, *Diana* communem.

Ohe interjectio priorem syllabam communem habet.

Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit: ut, *Dicite Pierides. Respice Lærten.*

Et in possessivis Græcis: ut, *Aenēia nutrix. Rhodopeius Orpheus.*

Omnis diphthongus apud Latinos longa est: ut, *ārum, nēuter, musē*: nisi sequente vocali; ut, *præire, præustus, præamplus.*

25

DERIVATIVA eandem ferè cum primitivis quantitatē sortiuntur: ut, *āmator, āmicus, āmabilis, primā brevi ab āmo.*

Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ à brevibus deducta primam syllabam producunt: ut,

<i>cōmo cōmis, à cōma,</i>	<i>mōbilis, à mōven,</i>
<i>fōmes, fōmentum, à fōveo,</i>	<i>nōnus, à nōvem,</i>
<i>hūmanus, ab hōmo,</i>	<i>rēr rēgis, rēgina, à rēgo,</i>
<i>jūcundus, à jūvo,</i>	<i>sēdes, à sēdeo,</i>
<i>jūmentum, à jūvo,</i>	<i>tēgula, à tēgo!</i>
<i>jūnior, à jūvenis,</i>	<i>trāgula, à trāho,</i>
<i>lāterna, à lāteo,</i>	<i>vōmer, à vōmo,</i>
<i>lēr lēgis, à lēgo.</i>	<i>vōx vōcis, à vōco.</i>

Et

Et contrā sunt, quæ à longis deducta primam corri-	
piunt : ut,	
ārena, ārista, ārundo, ab āreo,	gēnui, à gīgno,
āruspex, ab āru,	lūcerna, à lūceo,
dīcax, à dīco,	nāto nātas, à nātu,
dītio, à dītis,	nōto nōtas, à nōtu,
dīsbertus, à dīssero,	pōsui, à pōno,
dux dūcis, à dūco,	pōtui, à pōssum,
fides, à fio,	sōpor, à sōpio.
frāgor, frāgilis, à frāngo,	

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitatem sequuntur: ut, à lēgo lēgis, perlēgo; lēgo, lēgas, allēgo; à pōtens, īpōtens; à sōlor, consōlor.

Excipiuntur tamen hæc brevia à longis enata: dejēro, pejēro, à jūro; innūba, pronūba, à nūbo.

OMNE præteritum dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, lēgi, ēmi, mōvi.

1. Excipias tamen, bībi, dēdi, scīdi, stēti, stīli, tūli, et fīdi, à fīndo.

2. Primam præteriti geminantia primam brevem habent: ut, cēcīdi à cado; cēcīdi à cēdo; dīdici, fēfelli, mōmordi, pēpendi, pūpugi, tētendi, tētigi, tōtondi, tūtudi.

SUPINUM dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, mīsum, lātum, lōtum, mōtum.

Excipe dātum, ītum, lītum, quītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum, stātum; et cītum à cieo cies; nam cītum à cīo cīs, quartæ, priorem habet longam.

ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. *A* FINITA producuntur; ut, amā, contrā, ergā.

1. Excipias, putā, itā, quīdā, posteā, ejā: item omnes casus in a, cujuscunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis: præter vocativos à Græcis in as; ut, ḥ Aeneā, ḥ Thomā: et ablativum primæ declinationis; ut, musā.

3. Numeralia in *ginta* finalem habent communem, sed frequentius longam: ut, *trigintā*.

II. In *b*, *d*, *t*, desinentia brevia sunt: *ut*, *āb*, *ād*, *capūt*.

III. In *c* desinentia producuntur: *ut*, *āc*, *sīc*, et *hīc* adverbium.

Sed duo in *c* corripiuntur; *nēc* et *donēc*.

Tria sunt communia; *fāc*, pronomē *hīc*, et neutrum ejus *hōc*, modō non sit ablātīvī casūs.

IV. *E* finita brevia sunt: *ut*, *marē*, *penē*, *legē*, *scribē*.

1. Excipiendae sunt omnes voces quintae inflexionis in *e*: *ut*, *fidē* et *diē*, *unā* cum particulis indē enatis: *ut*, *hodiē*, *quotidiē*, *pridiē*, *postridiē*; item *quarē*, *quaderē*, *earē*, et si qua sunt similia.

2. Et secundae item personae singulares secundae conjugationis: *ut*, *docē*, *move*.

Producuntur etiam monosyllaba in *e*; *ut*, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*; præter *quē*, *nē*, *vē*, conjunctiones encliticas.

Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundae declinationis deducta, *e* longum habent; *ut pulchrē*, *doctē*, *valdē* pro *validē*.

Quibus accedunt *fermē*, *ferē*; *benē* tamen et *malē* corripiuntur omnino.

Postremō, quæ à Græcis per γ scribuntur, naturā producuntur, cujuscunque fuerint casūs, generis, aut numeri; *ut*, *Lethē*, *Anchisē*, *cetē*, *Tempē*.

V. *I* finita longa sunt: *ut*, *dominē*, *magistri*, *amari*.

Præter *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ulī*, *ibī*, quæ sunt communia.

Nisi *verō*, et *quasi*, corripiuntur.

Cujus etiam sortis sunt dativi et vocativi Græcorum, quorum genitivus singularis in οι breve exit: *ut*, Dativ. *Minoīdī*, *Palladī*, *Phyllidī*; Vocat. *Alexī*, *Amarylli*, *Daphnī*.

VI. *L* finita corripiuntur: *ut*, *animāl*, *Annibāl*, *mēl*, *pugil*, *consūl*.

Præter *nūl* contractum à *nihil*; *sāl*, et *sōl*.

Et Hebræa quædam in *el*: *ut*, *Michaēl*, *Gabriēl*, *Raphaēl*, *Daniēl*.

VII. *N* fi-

VII. *N* finita producuntur: ut, *Pæān*, *Hymēn*, *quān*, *Xenophōn*, *nōn*, *dæmōn*.

Excipe, *forsān*, *forsitān*, *ān*, *tamēn*, *attamēn*, *veruntamēn*, et *īn*.

Accedunt his et *voces illæ*, quæ apocopen patiuntur: ut, *mēn'*? *vidēn'*? *audīn'*? etiam *exīn*, *subīn*, *deīn*, *proīn*.

In *an* quoque à nominativis in *a*; ut, Nominativo, *Iphigenia*, *Ægina*; Accus. *Iphigeniān*, *Æginān*. Nam in *an* à nominativis in *as* producuntur: ut, Nom. *Æneas*, *Marsyas*; Accus. *Æneān*, *Marsyān*.

Nomina item in *en*, quorum genitivus *īnis* correptum habet: ut, *carmēn*, *crimēn*, *pectēn*, *tibicēn*, *-īnis*.

Quædam etiam in *īn* per *i*: ut, *Alexīn*: et in *yn* per *y*: ut, *Ityn*.

Græca etiam in *on* per *o* parvum, cujuscunque fuerint casus: ut, Nom. *Iliōn*, *Pelion*; Accus. *Caucasōn*, *Pylōn*.

VIII. *O* finita communia sunt: ut, *dicō*, *virgō*, *porrō*, Sic *docendō*, *legendō*, et alia gerundia in *do*.

Sed obliqui casus in *o* semper producuntur: ut, Dat. *dominō*; *servō*; Ablat. *templō*, *damnō*.

Et adverbia ab adjectivis derivata: *tantō*, *quantō*, *liquidō*, *falsō*, *primō*, *manifestō*, &c. *præter*, *sedulō*, *mutuō*, *crebrō*, quæ sunt communia.

Cæterū *modō* et *quomodō* semper corripiuntur.

Citō quoque, ut et *ambō*, *duō*, *egō*, atque *homō*, vix leguntur producta.

Monosyllaba tamen in *o* producuntur: ut, *dō*, *stō*.

Item Græca per *ω*, cujusmodi fuerint casus: ut, Nom. *Sapphō*, *Didō*, Gen. *Androgeō*, *Apollō*; Accus. *Athō*, *Apollō*: sic et *ergō* pro *causā*.

IX. *R* finita corripiuntur: ut, *Cæsār*, *pēr*, *vīr*, *uxōr*, *turtūr*.

Producuntur etiam *fār*, *Lār*, *Nār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, *pār*, quoque cum compositis: ut, *compār*, *impār*, *dispār*.

Græca etiam in *er*, quæ illis in *ηρ* desinunt: ut, *aēr*, *cratēr*,

cratēr, charactēr, aethēr, sotēr : *præter patēr, et matēr, quæ apud Latinos ultimam brevem habent.*

X. *S* finita pares cum numero vocalium habent terminaciones : nempe, *as, es, is, os, us.*

I. *AS* finita producuntur : ut, *amās, musās, majestās, bonitās.*

Præter Græca, quorum genitivus singularis in *dos* exit : ut, *Arcās, Pallās*; genitivo *Arcados, Pallados.*

Et præter accusativos plurales nominum crescentium : ut, *heros, heroos*; *Phyllis, Phyllidos*; accus. plur. *herroās, Phyllidās.*

II. *Es* finita longa sunt : ut, *Anchisēs, sedēs, docēs, patrēs.*

1. Exciuntur nomina in *es* tertie inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripiunt : ut, *milēs, segēs, divēs.* Sed *ariēs, abiēs, pariēs, Cérēs*; et *pēs, unā* cum compositis ; ut, *bipēs, tripēs*; longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque à *sum*, unā cum compositis, corripitur : ut, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*, quibus *penēs* adjungi potest.

3. Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum ; ut, *hippomanēs, cacoēthēs, Cyclopēs, Naiadēs.*

III. *Is* finita brevia sunt : ut, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs, hilariīs.*

1. Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is*, qui producuntur : ut, *musīs, mensīs, à mensa, dominīs, templīs* : et *quiīs, pro quibus.*

2. Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis : ut, *Samnīs, Salamīs*; genitivo *Samnītis, Salamīnīs.*

3. Adde huc quæ in *is* contracta ex *eis* desinunt, sive Græca, sive Latina, cujuscunque fuerint numeri aut casus : ut, *Simoīs, Pyroīs, partīs, omnīs, è Simoeīs, Pyroeīs, parteīs, omneīs.*

4. Et monosyllaba item omnia : ut, *vīs, līs, præter is et quiīs nominativos, et bīs.*

5. Istis accedunt secundæ personæ singulares verbo-
~~um~~ *in is, quorum* secundæ personæ plurales desinunt in
īs, iīs, iīs

ītis, penultimā productā; unā cum futuris optativi īn
ris: ut, *audīs*, *velīs*, *dederīs*; plural. *audītis*, *velītis*,
dederītis.

iv. *Os* finita producuntur: ut, *honōs*, *nepōs*, *dominōs*,
servōs.

Præter *compōs*, *impōs*, et *ōs* *ossis*.

Et Græca per *o* parvum: ut, *Delōs*, *chaōs*, *Palladōs*,
Phyllidōs.

v. *Us* finita corripiuntur: ut, *famulūs*, *regiūs*, *tempūs*,
amamūs.

Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi cres-
centis: ut, *salūs*, *tellūs*, genitivo *salūtis*, *tellūris*.

Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflexionis in
us, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares: ut,
gen. sing. *manūs*, nom. accus. voc. plur. *manūs*.

His accedunt etiam monosyllaba: ut, *crūs*, *thūs*, *mūs*,
sūs.

Et Græca item per *ee* diphthongum, cujuscunque
fuerint casūs: ut, nom. *Panthūs*, *Melampūs*; gen. *Sap-
phūs*, *Cliūs*.

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iesūs.

XI. Postremò *u* finita producuntur omnia: ut, *manū*,
genū, *amatū*, *diū*.

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS;

OR, THE

GENDERS OF NOUNS

CONSTRUED.

PROPRIA *proper names* quæ which tribuuntur are assigned maribus to the male kind dicas you may call mascula masculines; ut *as* sunt are Divorum the names of the heathen gods; Mars the god of war; Bacchus the god of wine, Apollo the god of wisdom: Virorum the names of men; ut *as*, Cato a noble Roman, Virgilius the poet Virgil: Fluviorum the names of rivers; ut *as*, Tiberis the Tiber, Orontes a river by Antioch: Mensium the names of months; ut *as*, October the month October: Ventorum the names of winds; ut *as*, Libs the south-west wind, Notus the south wind, Auster the south wind.

PROPRIA *nomina proper names* referentia denoting foemineum sexum the female sex tribuuntur are given foemineo generi to the feminine gender; sive whether sunt they are Dearum the names of goddesses; ut *as*, Juno Jupiter's wife, Venus the goddess of beauty: Muliebria the names of women; ut *as*, Anna Anne, Philotis Philote: Urbium the names of cities; ut *as*, Elis a city of Peloponnesus, Opus a city of Locris: Regionum the names of countries; ut *as*, Græcia Greece, Persis Persia: item also nomen the name insulæ of an island; ceu *as*, Creta Crete, Britannia Britain, Cyprus Cyprus.

Tamen but quædam some names urbium of cities sunt excipienda to be excepted; ut *as*, ista mascula these ^{masculines};

masculines; Sulmo a town in Italy, Agragas a town in Sicily: quædam neutralia some neuters; ut *as*, Argos a city in Peloponnesus, Tibur a city in Italy, Præneste a city of Italy; et also Anxur a city of Italy, quod which dat gives utrumque genus both the masculine and neuter gender.

APPELLATIVA the common names arborum of trees erunt will be muliebria feminines: ut *as*, alnus an alder-tree, cupressus a cypress-tree, cedrus a cedar-tree.

Spinus a sloe-tree mas is masculine, oleaster a wild olive-tree mas is masculine. Sunt these nouns are et also neutra of the neuter gender, siler a withy-tree, suber a cork-tree, thus a frankincense-tree, robur an oak, que and acer a maple-tree.

ETIAM also volucrum the names of birds; ceu *as*, passer a sparrow, hirundo a swallow: Ferarum of wild beasts; ut *as*, tigris a tiger, vulpes a fox: et and Pis-
cium the names of fishes; ut *as*, ostrea an oyster, cetus a whale, sunt are dicta called epicœna nouns of the epicœne gender, quibus to which vox ipsa the termination itself feret will give genus aptum the right gender.

ATTAMEN but notandum it is to be observed ex cunctis of all the nouns suprà above mentioned, que and reliquis of those that follow, omne that every noun quod which exit in um ends in um, seu whether Græcum it be Greek sive or Latinum Latin, esse is genus neutrum of the neuter gender; sic also nomen a noun invariabile undeclinata.

NOMEN a noun non crescens not increasing genitivo in the genitive case; ceu *as*, caro carnis flesh, capra capræ a she goat, nubes nubis a cloud, est is genus muliebre of the feminine gender.

NOMINA multa many nouns virorum denoting the offices of men in a ending in a dicuntur are called mascula masculines: ut *as*, scriba a scribe, assecla a pug, acrua a buffoon.

a buffoon, et and rabula a pettifogger, lixa a sutler, lanista a master of gladiators.

Quot. as many nouns as declinatio prima the first declension Græcorum of the Greeks fundit makes to end in as et and in es; et and quot as many Latin nouns as fiunt are derived ab illis from them per a ending in a, mascula are masculines; ut as, satrapas satrapa a Persian nobleman; athletes athleta a wrestler. Item also leguntur these are read mascula of the masculine gender, verres a boar pig, natalis one's birth-day, aqualis an ewer.

Nata nouns compounded ab asse of as a Roman coin or pound, ut as, centussis a hundred asses; conjunge join to these lienis the spleen, et and orbis any round thing, callis a path, caulis a stalk, follis bellows, collis a hill, mensis a month, et and ensis a sword, fustis a club, funis a rope, cenchris a kind of serpent, panis bread, crinis hair, et and ignis fire, cassis a toil or net, fascis a faggot, torris a fire-brand, sentis a thorn, piscis a fish, et and unguis a man's nail, et also vermis a worm, vectis a lever, postis a door-post, et also axis an axle-tree, societur may be joined.

In er nouns ending in er, ceu as, venter the belly; in os vel us, nouns ending in os or us, ut as, logos a word, annus a year, mascula are masculines.

At but sunt these nouns are foeminei generis of the feminine gender, mater a mother, humus the ground, domus a house, alvus a paunch, et and colus a distaff, et also ficus quartæ of the fourth declension pro for fructu a fig, que and acus a needle, porticus a porch, atque and tribus a tribe, socrus a mother-in-law, nurus a daughter-in-law, et and manus a hand, idus the ides of a month; huc to these anus an old woman, addenda est is to be added, huc to these mystica vannus the mystical fan Iacchi of Bacchus.

Jungas you may also join his to these Græca Greek nouns vertentia changing os in us, os into us: papyrus paper, antidotus an antidote, costus the herb zedoary, diphthongus adiphthong, byssus fine flax, abyssus a bottomless

a bottomless pit, crystallus crystal, synodus an assembly, sapphirus a sapphire stone, eremus a desert, et and Arc-tus a set of stars called the Bear, cum with multis aliis many other nouns, quæ which nunc at this time perscribere to write at large longum est is tedious.

NOMEN a noun in *e* ending in *e*, si if gignit is *it makes* is in the genitive case, neutrum is *neuter*, *ut as, mare the sea, rete a net*; *et and adde add* quot whatever nouns legas you read in on ending in *on*, *flexa peri* which make *i* in the genitive case, *ut as, barbiton a harp or lute*. *Hippomanes a raging humour in mares est* is neutrum *genus of the neuter gender*, *et and cacoëthes an ill habit* neutrum is *neuter*, *et also virus poison, pelagus the sea; Vulgus the common people modò sometimes neutrum is neuter, modò sometimes mas is masculine.*

SUNT these nouns are incerti generis of the doubtful gender, *talpa a mole, et and dama a deer, canalis a channel, et and cytisus hadder, balanus the fruit of the palm-tree, clunis a buttock, finis an end or limit, penus all provisions, amnis a river, pampinus a vine leaf, et and corbis a basket, linter a bark, torquis a chain, specus a cave, anguis a snake; ficus, dans making fici in the genitive case, pro morbo for a disease, atque and phaselus a pinnace, lecythus an oil cruse, ac and atomus an atom, grossus a green fig, pharus a watch-tower, et and paradisus paradise.*

COMPOSITUM a noun compounded à verbo of a verb *dans a ending in a, est is commune duorum the common of two genders; Grajugena a Grecian born à from gigno to beget: agricola a farmer à from colo to till; advena a stranger, à from venio to come, monstrant show id that.*

Adde add senex an old man or woman, auriga a charioteer, *et and verna a slave by birth, sodalis a companion, vates a prophet, extorris a banished man or woman, patruelis a cousin-german, que and perduellis an open enemy in war, affinis one allied by marriage, iuvenia a young*

young person, testis a witness, civis a citizen, canis a dog or bitch, hostis an enemy.

NOMEN *a noun est is genus muliebre of the feminine gender si if penultima syllaba the last syllable but one genitivi of the genitive case crescentis increasing sonat sounds acuta long or sharp: velut as haec these nouns pietas pietatis piety, virtus virtutis virtue monstrant do show.*

NOMINA quædam *certain nouns monosyllaba of one syllable dicuntur are called mascula masculines, sal salt, sol the sun, ren a kidney, et and splen the spleen, Car a Carian, Ser a Chinese, vir a man or husband, vas vadis a surety, as a pound weight, mas the male kind, bes eight ounces, Cres a Cretan, præs a surety for money, et and pes a foot, glis a dormouse habens having gliris genitivo in the genitive case, mos a manner, flos a flower, ros dew, et and Tros a Trojan, mus a mouse, dens a tooth, mons a mountain, pons a bridge, et and simul also fons a fountain, seps pro for serpente a serpent, gryps a griffin, Thrax a Thracian, rex a king, grex gregis a flock of cattle, et and Phryx a Phrygian.*

Etiam also polysyllaba nouns of more than one syllable, in n ending in n, sunt are mascula masculines: ut *as, Acarnan a man of Acarnania, lichen a tetter, et and delphin a dolphin: et also in o nouns ending in o, signantia signifying corpus bodily substance; ut as, leo a lion, curculio the weasand or gullet: sic also senio the number six, ternio the number three, sermo a discourse.*

In er, or, et os, nouns ending in er, or, and os, mascula are masculines: *ceu as, crater a bowl, conditor a builder, heros a hero: His to these conjunge join torrens a land flood, nefrens a young pig, oriens the east, que and cliens a client, atque and bidens instrumentum a fork with two spikes, cum pluribus with many nouns in dens ending in dens: adde add to these gigas a giant, elephas an elephant, adamas a diamond, que and Garamas a man of Libya,*

Libya, que *also* tapes *tapestry*, atque *and* lebes *a caldron*,
 sic *so* et *also* magnes *a loadstone*, que *and* unum nomen
one noun quintæ *of the fifth declension*, meridies *mid-day*;
et also quæ *the nouns which* componantur *are compounded*
ab *of* asse *a pound weight*, ut *as*, dodrans *nine ounces*,
semis *half a pound*.

Mascula *these masculines* jungantur *may be joined*,
 Samnis *a Samnite*, hydrops *the dropsy*, et *and* thorax
the breast: jungas *you may join* quoque *also* mascula
these masculines, vervex *a weather sheep*, phœnix *a phe-*
nix, et *and* bombyx *pro for* vermiculo *a silk-worm*: At-
 tamen *yet* ex his *of these* siren *a mermaid*, necnon *and*
also soror *a sister*, uxor *a wife*, sunt *are* muliebre *genus*
of the feminine gender.

ET *also* hæc nomina *these nouns* monosyllaba *of one*
syllable sunt *are* neutralia *neuters*; mel *honey*, fel *gall*,
 lac *milk*, far *bread-corn*, ver *the spring*, æs *brass*, cor
the heart, vas *vasis a vessel*, os *ossis a bone*, et *and* os
 oris *a mouth*, rus *the country*, thus *frankincense*, jus
right, crus *the leg*, pus *corruption*.

Et *also* polysyllaba *nouns of many syllables* in al *end-*
ing in al, que *and* in r *ending in r*; ut *as*, capital *a*
priest's veil, laquear *a roof or ceiling*: alec *a sharp pickle*
neutrum is neuter, alex *a kind of fish* muliebre *is semi-*
nine.

SUNT *these nouns* are dubii generis *of the doubtful*
gender; scrobs *a ditch*, serpens *a serpent*, bubo *an owl*,
 rudens *a cable*, grus *a crane*, perdix *a partridge*, lynx *a*
spotted beast, limax *a snail*, stirps *pro for* trunco *the body*
of a tree, et *and* calx *pedis the heel of the foot*.

Adde *add* dies *a day*, tantum *only* esto *let it be* mas-
masculine numero *secundo in the plural number*.

SUNT *these nouns* are commune *of the common of two*
genders; parens *a father or mother*, que *and* auctor *an*
author, infans *an infant*, adolescens *a young man or wo-*
man, dux *a leader*, illex *an outlaw*, haeres *an heir*, exlex
an outlaw.

· Creata nouns compounded à of fronte a forehead; ut as, bifrons one with two faces, custos a keeper, bos an ox, bull, or cow, fur a thief, sus a swine, atque and sacerdos a priest or priestess.

NOMEN a noun est is mās of the masculine gender, si if penultima the last syllable but one genitivi of the genitive case crescentis increasing sit be gravis short or flat: ut as, sanguis blood, genitivo in the genitive case sanguinis.

HYPERDISSYLLABON let a noun of more than two syllables, in do ending in do, quod which dat makes dinis in the genitive case, sit be foeminei generis of the feminine gender; atque also in go nouns ending in go, quod which make ginis in genitivo in the genitive case; dulcedo sweetness faciens making dulcedinis, monstrat shows id that tibi to you, que and compago compaginis a joint id shows the same. Adjice add virgo a virgin, grando hail, fides faith, compes a fetter, teges a mat, et and seges corn-land, arbor a tree, que and hyems winter: sic so chlamys a mantle, et and sindon fine linen, Gorgon Medusa's head, icon an image, et and Amazon an Amazon.

Græcula Greek nouns finita ending in as, vel or in is; ut as, lampas a lamp, iaspis a jasper, cassis a helmet, cuspis the point of a weapon; item also mulier a woman, et and pecus cattle dans making pecudis in the genitive case.

Adde add his to these forfex a pair of shears, pellex a harlot, carex sedge, atque and simul also supellex household-stuff, appendix an appendage, hystrix a porcupine, coxendix a hip, que and filix fern.

NOMEN a noun in a ending in a, signans signifying rem a thing non animatam without life est is neutrale genus of the neuter gender; ut as, problema a question proposed: en nouns also ending in en; ut as, omen a token of good or bad luck: ar nouns ending in ar; ut as, jubar a sun-beam: ur nouns ending in ur; ut as, jecur

jecur *the liver*: us nouns in us; ut *as*, onus *a burthen*: put nouns ending in put; ut *as*, occiput *the hinder part of the head*.

Attamen but ex his of these pecten *a comb*, furfur *bran*, sunt are mascula *masculines*.

Sunt these nouns are neutra of the neuter gender, cadaver *a carcase*, verber *a stripe*, iter *a journey*, suber *cork*, tuber *pro for fungo a mushroom*, et and uber *a teat*, gingiber *ginger*, et and laser *the herb benjamine*, cicer *a vetch*, et and piper *pepper*, atque and papaver *a poppy*, et also siser *a parsnip*.

Addas you may add his to these neutra the neuters æquor *a smooth surface*, marmor *marble*, que and ador *fine wheat*, atque and pecus *cattle*, quandowhen facit it makes pecoris in genitivo in the genitive case.

SUNT these nouns are dubii generis of the doubtful gender, cardo *a hinge*, margo *the brink or brim of a thing*, cinis *ashes*, obex *a bolt*, forceps *a pair of tongs*, pumex *a pumice stone*, imbrex *a gutter-tile*, cortex *the rind or bark of a tree*, pulvis *dust*, que and adeps *fat*.

Adde add, culex *a gnat*, natrix *a water-serpent*, et and onyx *a precious stone*, cum prole with its compounds, que and silex *a flint*, quamvis although usus use vult will have haec these nouns melius rather dicier be called mascula *masculines*.

ISTA these nouns sunt are communis generis of the common of two genders; vigil *a sentinel*, pugil *a champion*, exul *a banished man or woman*, praesul *a prelate*, homo *a man or woman*, nemo *nobody*, martyr *a martyr*, Ligur *a Ligurian*, augur *a soothsayer*, et and Arcas *an Arcadian*, antistes *a chief priest or priestess*, miles *a soldier*, pedes *a foot-man or woman*, interpres *an interpreter*, comes *a companion*, hospes *a host or landlord*: sic so ales any great bird, praeses *a president*, princeps *a prince or princess*, auceps *a fowler*, eques *a horse-man or woman*, obses *a hostage*: atque and alia multa nomina many other nouns quæ which creatur are derived à verbis from verbs: ut *as*, conjux *a husband or wife*, judex *a judge*, vindic

vindex *an avenger*, opifex *a workman*, et *and* aruspex *a diviner*.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives* habentia *having* duntaxat *only* unam vocem *one termination*, ut *as*, felix *happy*, audax *bold*, retinent *keep* genus *omne every gender* sub una *under that one ending*; si *if* cadant *they fall* sub under geminâ *voce a double termination*, velut *as*, omnis *et and omne all*; vox prior *the former word* est *is* commune duum *the common of two genders*, vox altera *the second word* neutrum *is neuter*; at *but* si *if* variant *they vary* tres voces *the three endings*; ut *as*, sacer, sacra, sacrum *sacred*; vox prima *the first word* est *is* mas *masculine*, altera *the second* foemina *feminine*, tertia *the third* neutrum *is neuter*.

Obser. 1. At *but* sunt *there are some* *adjectives* quæ *which* vocares *you may call* substantiva *substantives* propè *in a manner* flexu *by their declining*: tamen *yet* reperta *they are found to be* *adjectiva adjectives* naturâ *by nature* quæ *and* usu *by use*. Talia *such* sunt *are* pauper *poor*, puber *ripe of age*, cum *with* degener *degenerate*, über *fruitful*, et *and* dives *rich*, locuples *wealthy*, sospes *safe*, comes *accompanying or attending*, atque *and* superstes *surviving*, cum *with* paucis *alius a few others* quæ *which* lectio *justa a due reading* docebit *will teach*.

Obs. 2. Hæc *these adjectives* gaudent *like* adsciscere *to take* sibi *to themselves* proprium *quendam flexum a certain peculiar way of declining*, campester *champaign*, volucer *swift*, celeber *famous*, celer *speedy*, atque *and* saluber *wholesome*; junge *join* pedester *belonging to a foot-man*, equester *belonging to a horse-man*, et *and* acer *sharp*; junge *join* paluster *marshy*, ac *and* alacer *cheerful*, sylvester *woody*.

At *but* tu *you* variabis *shall decline* hæc *these adjectives* sic *thus*: hic celer *in the masculine*, hæc celeris *in the feminine*, hoc celere neutro *in the neuter gender*; aut *or* aliter *otherwise* sic *thus*; hic atque hæc celeris *in the masculine and feminine*, rursum *again* hoc celere est *is tibi neutrum your neuter*.

NOUNS HETEROCLITE,

OR

IRREGULAR,

CONSTRUED.

QUÆ *those nouns which variant change genus their gender aut or flexum declension, quæcunque and whatsoever nouns novato ritu after a new manner deficient fall short ve or superant exceed in declining, sunt let them be called heterocita heteroclices, or nouns irregular.*

CERNIS *you see hæc these nouns variantia varying partim in part genus their gender, ac and flexum their declining.*

Pergamus *the city Troy gignit makes Pergama, in plurali numero in the plural number.*

Prior numerus *the singular number dat gives his to these nouns neutrum genus the neuter gender, alter the plural utrumque both masculine and neuter; rastrum a rake cum with freno the bit of a bridle, filum a thread, simul atque and also capistrum a halter: item also Argos a town in Greece, et and cœlum heaven sunt are neutra neuters singula in the singular number, sed but audi observe vocabis you shall say duntaxat only, cœlos, et and Argos in the plural number mascula masculines: sed but frena neuter et and frenos masculine, quo pacto after which manner formant they form et also cætera the rest.*

Pluralis numerus *the plural number solet is wont addere to add his to these genus utrumque both genders; sibilus a hissing, atque and jocus sport, locus a place: jungas you may join his to these quoque also plurima many more.*

PROPAGO *the stock quæ which sequitur follows est is manca defective casu in case ve or numero in number.*

QUÆ

QUE nouns which variant vary nullum casum no case; ut *as*, *fas* *divine law*, *nil* *nothing*, *nihil* *nothing*, *instar* *likeness or proportion*: et *and* *multa* *many nouns* in *u* *ending in u*, *simul* *also in i*; ut *as* sunt are *hæc* *these* *que* *both* *cornu* *a horn*, *que* *and* *genu* *a knee*; sic *so* *gummi* *gum*, *frugi* *thrifty*; sic *so* *Tempe* *a pleasant vale* in *Thessaly*, tot *so many*, quot *how many*, et *and* *omnes* *numeros* *all nouns of number* à *tribus* *from three* ad *centum* *to a hundred* *vocabis* *you shall call* *aptota* *aptotes*.

QUE and nomen a noun cui vox cadit una that has but one case est is called monoptoton a monoptote; ceu *as*, *noctu* *by night*, *natu* *by birth*, *jussu* *by order*, *injussu* *without order*, *simul* *also* *astu* *by craft*, *promptu* *in readiness*, *permissu* *with leave*: *legimus* *we have read* *astus* *plurali* in the plural number: *legimus* *we have read* *inficias* *a denial*, sed *but* *vox ea sola* that *case* *alone* *reperta* est is found.

SUNT those nouns are called diptota diptotes, quibus to which duplex flexura two cases remansit have remained: ut *as*, *fors* *chance* *dabit* *will make* *forte*, *sesto* in the ablative case, *quoque* *also* *spontis* of choice *sponte*: et *and* *jugeris* *an acre* *dat* *makes* *jugere*, *sesto* in the ablative case: *atque* *and* *verberis* *a stripe* *verbere*, *quoque* *also* *suppetiae* *aid* *dant* *makes* *suppetias*, *quarto* in the accusative case; *tantundem* *just so much* *dat* *makes* *tantidem*, et *and* *simul* *also* *impetus* *an attack* *dat* *makes* *impete* in the ablative case; sic *so* *repetundarum* *illegal extactions* *repetundis*. *Verberis* *a stripe* *cum* *with* *jugere* *an acre* *servant* *keep* *quatuor* *casus* *four cases*, in numero altero in the plural number.

VOCANTUR nouns are called triptota triptotes, quibus in which inflectis you decline tres casus three cases: sic *so* est *it* *is* *opis* *nostræ* in our power, *legis* *you meet* with *fer* *opem* *bring* *assistance*, *atque* *and* *dignus* *worthy* *ope* of help: *flecte* *decline* *preci* *prayer*, *atque* *and* *precem*, et *and* *blandus* *petit* *he complaisantly* *courts* *amicam* *his* *mistress* *prece* with entreaties: at *but* *frugis* *fruit* *caret* wants

wants tantum only recto the nominative case, et and also ditionis rule; vox the word vis force est is integra entire, nisi unless fortè perhaps dativus the dative case desit being wanting: Jungas you may join his to these vicis a turn atque and vicem et and vice; quoque also plus more habet has pluris, et and plus, quarto in the accusative case: numerus alter the plural number datur is given omnibus his to all these nouns.

NOTES you may observe propria cuncta all proper names, quibus est which have natura a nature coercens restraining them ne fuerint from being plurima plurals; et and alia multa many other nouns occurrent tibi will fall in your way legenti in reading, raro seldom excedentia exceeding numerum primum the singular number.

MASCULA these masculines sunt are contenta confined numero secundo to the plural number tantum only, manes ghosts, majores ancestors, cancelli lattices, liberi children, et and antes the fore ranks of vines, lentes nits, et and lemures spectres, simul also fasti annals, atque and minores posterity, natales, cum when assignant it signifies genus an extraction; adde add, penates household gods, et and loca names of places plurali of the plural number, quales as, que both Gabii a city in Italy, que and Locri the inhabitants of Locris, et and quæcunque whatever nouns similis rationis of like nature legas you may read passim in authors.

Hæc thæse nouns sunt are foeminei generis of the feminine gender, que and numeri secundi of the plural number, exuviae any thing stript off from the body, phaleræ horse-trappings, que and grates thanks, manubiae the spoils of war, et and idus the ides of a month, antæ a fore-lock et and inducæ a truce, simul also que both insidiæ an ambush que and minæ threats, excubiae watch by day or night, nonæ the nones of a month, nugæ trifles, que and tricæ toys, calendæ the calends of a month, quisquiliæ the sweepings or refuse of any thing, thermæ a hot-bath, cunæ a cradle, diræ curses, que and exequiae funeral rites, feriæ holidays, et and inferiæ sacrifices performed

to the dead, sic so que both primitiæ the first fruits of the year, que and plagæ signantes signifying retia nets, et and valvæ folding doors, que and divitiæ riches, item also nuptiæ a marriage, et and lactes the small guts; Thebæ Thebes, et and Athenæ Athens addantur may be added, quod genus of which sort invenias you may find et also nomina plura more names locorum of places.

Hæc neutra these nouns neuter pluralia of the plural number leguntur are read rariùs seldom primo in the singular; mœnia the walls of a city, cum with tesquis rough and desert places, præcordia the midriff of the body, lustra the dens ferarum of wild beasts, arma arms, mapalia Numidian cottages, sic so bellaria junkets, munia an office or charge, castra a camp; funus a funeral petit requires justa solemnities, et and virgo a virgin petit requires sponsalia espousals; disertus an eloquent man amat loves rostra the pulpit, que and pueri children gestant carry crepundia rattles, que and infantes infants colunt cunabula lie in cradles; augur a soothsayer consulit consults exta the entrails, et and absolvens finishing his sacrificio superis to the gods above recantat chants over effata their decrees; festa the feasts déum of the gods, ceu as, Bacchanalia feasts dedicated to Bacchus, poterunt will be proper jungi to be joined. Quid si and if leges you shall read plura more, licet reponas you may place them quoque also hæc classe in this rank.

HÆC these nouns sunt are simul also et both quarti of the fourth atque and secundi flexus the second declension; enim for laurus a bay-tree facit makes genitivo in the genitive case lauri et and laurūs, sic so quercus an oak, pinus a pine-tree, ficus, pro for fructu a fig, ac and arbore the tree, sic also colus a distaff, atque and penus all kinds of victuals, cornus, quando when habetur it signifies arbor a tree, sic so lacus a lake, atque and domus a house: licet although hæc these nec recurrent are not found ubique in every case. Leges you will read quoque also plura more his than these, quæ which jure relinquas you may well leave priscis to the ancients.

AS IN PRÆSENTI, &c.

OR, THE
RULES FOR VERBS

CONSTRUED.

AS in præsenti *a verb making as in the present tense* format *forms* perfectum *the preterperfect tense* in avi : Ut as, no nas *to swim* navi, vocito vocitas *to call* often vocitavi. Deme *except* lavo *to wash* lavi, juvo *to help* juvi, que *and* nexo *to knit* nexui, et *and* seco *to cut*, quod *which makes* secui, neco *to kill*, quod *which makes* necui ; verbum *the verb* mico *to glitter*, quod *which makes* micui, pllico *to fold*, quod *which makes* plicui, frico *to rub*, quod *which dat makes* fricui ; sic so domo *to tame*, quod *which makes* domui, tono *to thunder*, quod *which makes* tonui ; verbum *the verb* sono *to sound*, quod *which makes* sonui ; crepo *to crack*, quod *which makes* crepui, veto *to forbid*, quod *which dat makes* vetui, atque *and* cubo *to lie along* cubui ; haec *these verbs* rād formantur *are seldom formed* in avi. Do das *to give* vult *will formare* form ritè *by custom* dedi, sto stas *to stand* steti.

ES in præsenti *a verb making es in the present tense* format *forms* perfectum *the preterperfect tense* dana ui *by ui* ; ut as nigreo nigres *to grow black* nigrui : excipe *except* jubeo *to bid* jussi ; sorbeo *to sup up* habet *hath* sorbui, quoque *also* sorpsi ; mulceo *to stroke gently* mulssi ; luceo *to shine* vult *will have* luxi, sedeo *to sit* sedi, que *and* video *to see* vult *will have* vidi ; sed *but* prandeo *to dine* makes prandi, strideo *to screak* stridi, suadeo *to advise* suasi, rideo *to laugh* risi, et *and* ardeo *to be on fire* habet *hath* arsi.

Syllaba prima *the first syllable* his quatuor *in these four verbs* infrà *following* geminatur *is doubled* : namque for pendedeo

pendeo *to hang down* vult *will have* pependi, que *and* mordeo *to bite* momordi, spondeo *to betroth* vult *will habere* have sposondi, que *and* tondeo *to clip or shear* totondi.

Si *if* l vel r, l or r, stet *stand* ante *before* geo, geo *vertitur* *is changed* in si *into* si : ut as urgeo *to urge* ursi ; mulgeo *to milk* dat *makes* mulsi, quoque *also* mulxi, frigeo *to be cold* frixi, lugeo *to mourn* luxi, et *and* augeo *to increase* habet *hath* auxi.

Fleo *fles to weep* dat *makes* flevi, leo les *to anoint* levi, que *and* indè natum *its compound* deleo *to wipe out* delevi, pleo ples *to fill* plevi, neo *to spin* nevi.

Mansi, formatur *is formed* à *from* maneo *to tarry* ; torqueo *to twist* vult *will have* torsi, hæreo *to stick* hæsi.

Veо, fit *is made* vi : ut as, ferveo *to be hot* fervi, niveo *to wink or beckon*, et *and* indè satum *its compound* conniveo *to wink* poscit *requires* nivi et *and* nixi : cieо *to stir up* civi, que *and* vleo *to bind* vievi.

TERTIA *the third conjugation* formabit *will form* præteritum *the preterperfect tense* ut as manifestum *is shown* hic *here*.

Bo, fit *is made* bi : ut as lambo *to lick* lambi : excipe *except* scribo *to write* scripsi, et *and* nubo *to be married* nupsi ; antiquum *the old verb* cumbo *to lie down* dat maketh cubui.

Co, fit *is made* ci : ut as vinco *to overcome* vici : parco *to spare* vult *will have* pepercí et *and* parsi : dico *to say* dixi, quoque *also* duco *to lead* duxi.

Do, fit *is made* di : ut as mando *to eat* mandi : sed but scindo *to cut* dat *makes* scidi, findo *to cleave* fidi, fundo *to pour out* fudi ; que *and* tundo *to pound* tutudi, pendo *to weigh* pependi, tendo *to bend* tetendi, que *and* junge *join* cado *to fall*, quod *which* format forms cecidi, cædo pro *for* verbero *to beat* cecidi, cedo pro *for* discedere *to depart*, sive *or* locum dare *to give place* cessi : vado *to go*, rado *to shave*, lædo *to hurt*, ludo *to play*, divido *to divide*, trudo *to thrust*, claudio *to shut*, plaudio *to clap hands*, rodo *to gnaw*, ex do *from* do, semper faciunt si *always make* si.

Go, fit is made xi ; ut as jungo to join junxi : sed but r the letter r ante before go, vult will have si ; ut as spargo to sprinkle sparsi ; lego to read legi, et and ago to act facit makes egī ; tango to touch dat makes tetigi, pungo to prick punxi, que and pupugi : frango to break dat makes fregi, pago for paciscor to covenant vult will have pepigi ; etiam also pango to fasten pegi, sed but usus custom maluit had rather form panxi.

Ho, fit is made xi : ceu as traho to draw traxi docet shows, et and vaho to carry vexi.

Lo, fit is made ui : ceu as colo to till colui : excipe except psallo to play upon an instrument cum p with p, et and sallo to season with salt sine p without p, nam for utrumque both tibi format make li ; vello to pluck dat makes velli, quoque also vulsi, fallo to deceive feffelli ; cello pro for frango to break ceculi, que and pello to drive away pepuli.

Mo, fit is made ui ; ceu as vomo to vomit vomui ; sed but emo to buy facit maketh emi : como to deck the hair petit requires compsi, promo to draw out prompsi ; adjice add demo to take away, quod which format forms dempsi, sumo to take sumpsi, premo to press pressi.

No, fit is made vi : ceu as sino to suffer sivi : excipe except temno to contemn tempsi ; sterno to strew dat makes stravi, sperno to despise sprevi, lino to smear over levi, interdum sometimes lini et and livi, quoque also cerno to discern crevi : gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini.

Po, fit is made psi : ut as scalpo to scratch scalpsi, excipe except rumpo to break rupi, et and strepo to make a noise, quod which format formeth strepui, crepo to crack, quod which dat makes crepui.

Quo, fit is make qui : ut as linquo to leave liqui ; demito except coquo to cook or dress meat coxi.

Ro, fit is made vi : ceu as sero pro for planto to plant, et and semino to sow sevi, quod which signans signifying ordino to set in order dabit will make semper always melius rather serui ; verro to brush vult will have verriet and versi ; uro to burn ussi, gero to bear gessi, quæro to seek quæsivi, tero to beat or bruise trivi, curro to run cucurri.

So, *formabit* *will form* sivi, *veluti as arceaso to send for*, *inceaso to attack*, *atque and laceaso to provoke* prebat *shows*: *sed but tolle except capesso to take in hand*, *quod which facit makes capessai*, *que and capessaivi*; *atque and facesso to dispatch facessi*, *et also viso to go to see viai*; *sed but pinso to pound or grind* habebit *will have* pinsui.

Sco, *fit is made* vi: *ut as pasco to feed cattle* pavi: *pasco to require* vult *will have* poposci, *disco to learn* vult *will formare* *form* didici, *quinisco to nod the head* quexi.

To, *fit is made* ti: *ut as verto to turn* verti: *sed but activum sisto let this verb active* sisto, *pro for facio stare to make to stand* notetur *be marked*, *nam for dat it makes jure by right* stiti; *mittio to send* dat *giveth* misi, *peto to ask* vult *will formare* *form* petivi, *sterto to snore* habet *hath* stertui, *meto to mow* messui. *Exi, fit is made* ab *from* ecto: *ut as flecto to bend* flexi; *necto to knit* dat *makes* nexui, *habetque and also has* nexi; *etiam also pecto to comb* dat *makes* pexui, *habet it hath* quoque *also pexi*.

Vo, *fit is made* vi: *ut as volvo to roll* volvi: *excipe except* vivo *to live* vixi.

Xo, *fit is made* ui: *ut as texo to weave*, *quod which habebit will have* texui, *monstrat showeth*.

Cio, *fit is made* ci: *ut as facio to do* feci; *quoque also jacio to cast* jeci: *antiquum the old verb* lacio *to allure* lexi, *quoque also specio to behold* spexi.

Dio, *fit is made* di: *ut as fodio to dig* fodi.

Gio, *fit is made* gi: *ceu as fugio to fly* fugi.

Pio, *fit is made* pi: *ut as capio to take* cepi: *excipe except* cupio *to desire* cupivi, *et and* rapio *to snatch* rapui, *sapio to savour or taste* sapui, *atque and* sapivi.

Rio, *fit is made* ri: *ut as pario to bring forth* young peperi.

Tio *makes* ssi, *geminans a doubling the letter s*: *ut as quatio to shake* quassai, *quod which vix reperitur is scarce found in usu in use*.

Denique *finally* Uo, *fit is made* ui: *ut as statuo to erect* statui; *pluo to rain* format *formeth* pluvi, *sive or pluvi*, *sed but struo to build* *makes* struxi, *fluo to flow* flexi.

QUARTA *the fourth conjugation* dat is *makes* is in the present tense, ivi in the preterperfect: ut *as* scio *scis* to know scivi, monstrat tibi *shows* you. Excipias except venio to come dans *making* veni, et and veneo to be sold venii, raucio to be hoarse rausi, farcio to stuff farsi, sarcio to patch sarsi, sepiio to hedge sepsi, sentio to perceive sensi, fulcio to prop fulsi, item also haurio to draw hausi, sancio to establish sanxi, vincio to bind vinxi, salio pro for salto to leap salti, et and amicio to clothe dat giveth amici.

SIMPLEX *the simple verb* et and compositum its compound dat makes idem praeteritum the same preterperfect tense: ut *as* docui *I have taught*, edocui *I have taught perfectly* monstrat *showeth*. Sed but syllaba the syllable quam which simplex the simple verb semper always geminat doubles non geminatur is not doubled composto in the compound: praeterquam except his tribus in these three, præcuro to run before, excuro to run out, repingo to prick again, atque and ritè creatis in verbs rightly compounded à of do to give, disco to learn, sto to stand, posco to require.

Compositum the compound verb à of pllico to fold, cum with sub, vel or nomine a noun, ut *as* ista these, supplico to beseech, multiplico to multiply, gaudet will formare form plicavi; applico to apply, complico to fold up, replico to fold back, or lay open, et and explico to unfold, formant make quoque also ui.

Quamvis although simplex the simple verb oleo to smell vult will have olui, tamen yet quodvis compositum every compound verb indè thereof formabit will form melius rather olevi; at but redolet to cast a scent sequitur follows formam the form simplicis of the simple verb, que and subolet to smell a little.

Omnia composita all the compound verbs à of pungo to prick formabunt will form punxi; unum one repingo to prick again vult will have pupugi, interdumque and sometimes repunxi.

Natum the compound à of do to give, quando when est it is inflexio tertia the third conjugation, ut *as* addo to add,

add, credo to believe, edo to set forth, dedo to yield up, redo to restore, perdo to lose, abdo to put away, vel or obdo to set against, condo to build, indo to put in, trado to deliver, prodo to betray, vendo to sell, make didi; at but unum *one* abscondo to hide, makes abscondi. Natum a compound à of sto stas to stand habebit will have stiti.

VERBA hæc simplicia these simple verbs, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense que and præteriti of the preterperfect tense, in e into e: damno to condemn, lacto to suckle, sacro to dedicate, fallo to deceive, arceo to drive away, tracto to handle, fatiscor to be weary, cando to burn, vetus an old word, capto to lie in wait, jacto to throw, patior to suffer, que and gradior to step, partio to divide, carpo to crop, patro to achieve or finish, scando to climb, spargo to sprinkle, que and pario to bring forth young, cuius duo nata whose two compounds comperit to know for certain, et and reperit to find dant make the preterperfect tense per i in i; sed but cætera the rest per ui in ui; velut as hæc these, aperire to open, operire to cover.

Hæc duo compôsta let these two compounds à of pasco pavi to feed cattle, compesco to pasture together, dispesco to drive from pasture, notentur be observed habere to make tantum only pescui; cætera the rest, ut as, epasco to eat up, servabunt will keep usum the use simplicis of the simple verb.

HÆC these verbs, habeo to have, lateo to lie hid, salio to leap, statuo to erect, cado to fall, lædo to hurt, et and tango to touch, atque and cano to sing, sic so quæro to seek, cædo cecidi to beat, sic also egeo to want, teneo to hold fast, taceo to hold one's peace, sapio to savour, que and rapiò to snatch, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel in i into i: ut as, rapiò to snatch rapui, eripio to take away by force eripui: natum a compound à of cano to sing dat makes præteritum the preterperfect tense per ui in ui, ceu as, concino to sing in concert concinui.

Sic

Sic also displiceo to displease à of placebo to please : sed but hæc duo these two compounds, complaceo to please cum with perplaceo to please very much, bene servant always keep usum the use simplicis of the simple verb.

Composita the compounds à of verbis the verbs calco to tread, salto to leap or dance, mutant change a per u a into u ; conculco to tread upon, inculco to tread in, resulto to rebound, demonstrant show id that tibi to you.

Composita the compounds à of claudio to shut, quatio to shake, lavo to wash, rejiciunt a cast away a : occludo to shut against, excludo to shut out, à from claudio to shut, docet teaches id this : que and percutio to strike, executio to strike out, à from quatio to strike : à from lavo to wash, nata the compounds proluo to drench, diluo to wash out.

SI if componas you compound hæc these verbs, ago to act, emo to buy, sedeo to sit, rego to rule, frango to break, et and capio to take, jacio to cast, lacio to allure, specio to behold, premo to press, pango to fasten, sibi mutant they change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense in i into i, nunquam never præteriti of the preterperfect tense : ceu us of frango to break, refringo to break open, makes refregi ; incipio to begin incepi, à of capio to take : sed but pauca let a few notentur be marked, namque for perago to finish sequitur follows suum simplex its simple verb, que and satago to be busy : atque and dego to live ab from ago to act, dat makes degi, cogo to bring together coëgi, sic so à from rego to rule, pergo to go forward, makes perrexii ; quoque and surgo to rise vult will have surrexi, media syllabâ the middle syllable præsentis of the present tense ademptâ being taken away.

Ista quatuor composita these four compound verbs, à of pango to fix or fasten retinent a keep a, depango to fix in the ground, oppango to fasten against, circumpango to fasten about, atque and repango to fasten again.

Facio to do variat changeth nil nothing, nisi unless præposito præeunte a preposition goes before ; olfacio to smell out docet teaches id that, cum with calfacio to make hot, que and inficio to infect.

Nata *the compounds à of* *lego to read, re, per, præ,* *sub, trans, ad, præeunte going before, servant keep* *vocab-*
lēm the vowel præsentis of the present tense: cætera the *rest mutant change it in i into i; de quibus of which*
hæc these tantum only, intelligo to understand, diligo *to love, negligo to neglect, faciunt make præteritum*
their preterperfect tense lexi; reliqua omnia all the rest
legi.

NUNC now discas *you may learn* *formare to form* *supi-*
num the supine ex præterito from the preterperfect tense.

Bi, sumit *takes* *sibi to itself* tum; namque *for* *sic so*
bibi to drink *fit makes* *bibitum.*

Ci, fit *is made* ctum: *ut as* *vici to overcome* *victum*
testatur shows, et and *ici to smite* *dans making* *ictum,*
feci to do *factum, quoque also* *jeci to cast* *jactum.*

Di, fit *is made* sum: *ut as* *vidi to see* *visum: quædam*
some *geminant s double s; ut as* *pandi to open* *passum,*
sedi to sit *sessum, adde add* *scidi to cut* *quod which* *dat*
makes *scissum, atque and* *fidi to cleave* *fissum, quoque*
also *fodi to dig* *fossum.*

Hic here etiam also advertas *you may mark, quod that*
syllaba prima the first syllable, quam which præteritum
the preterperfect tense vult geminari will have doubled,
non geminatur is not doubled supinis in the supines, id-
que and this totondi to clip or shear *dans making* *tonsum,*
docet shows, atque and *cecidi to beat*, *quod which* *maketh*
cæsum, et and *cecidi to fall*, *quod which* *dat* *maketh*
casum, atque and *tetendi to bend*, *quod which* *maketh*
tensum et also *tentum, tutudi to beat or pound* *tunsum,*
atque and *dedi to give* *quod which* *jure by right* *poscit*
requires *datum; atque and* *momordi to bite* *vult will*
have morsum.

Gi, fit *is made* ctum: *ut as* *legi to read* *lectum; pegi*
to fasten *que and* *pepigi to covenant* *dant make* *pactum,*
fregi to break *fractum, quoque also* *tetigi to touch* *tactum,*
egi to act *actum, pupugi to prick* *punctum; fugi to flee*
dat makes *fugitum.*

Li, fit *is made* sum: *ut as* *salli, stans standing* *pro*
for sale *condio to season with salt, makes* *salsum; pe-*
puli

puli to drive away dat makes pulsum, ceculi to break culsum, atque and fefelli to deceive falsum; velli to pluck dat makes vulsum, quoque also tuli to bear habet hath latum.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, formant form tum, velut as manifestum is manifest hic here. Emi to buy emptum, veni to come ventum, cecini à from cano to sing cantum, cepi à from capio to take captum, quoque also coepi to begin cœptum, rupi à from rumpo to break ruptum; quoque also liqui to leave lictum.

Ri, fit is made sum: ut as verri to brush versum; excipe except peperi to bring forth young partum.

Si, fit is made sum: ut as visi to go to see visum; tamen but misi to send formabit will form missum, s germinato s being doubled; excipe except fulsi to prop fulsum, hausi to draw haustum, sarsi to patch sartum, quoque also farsi to stuff fartum, ussi to burn ustum, gessi to bear gestum; torsi to wreath requirit hath duo two supines tortum et and torsum, indulsi to indulge indulsum que and indulsum.

Psi, fit is made ptum: ut as scripsi to write scriptum: quoque also sculpsi to engrave sculptum.

Ti, fit is made tum; namque for steti à from sto to stand, que and stiti à from sisto to make to stand, ambo both ritè by right dant make statum: tamen but excipe except verti to turn versum.

Vi, fit is made tum: ut as flavi to blow flatum: excipe except pavi to feed cattle pastum; lavi to wash dat makes lotum, interdum sometimes lautum atque and lavatum; potavi to drink facit mukes potum, interdum sometimes et also potatum; sed but favi to favour makes fautum, eavi to beware cautum; à from sero sevi to sow ritè formes you may rightly form satum, livi que and lini to besmear dant make litum; solvi à from solvo to loose solutum, volvi à from volvo to roll volutum; singultivi to sob vult will have singultum, veneo venis venivi to be sold venum, sepelivi to bury ritè by right sepultum.

Quod a verb that dat makes ui, dat makes itum: ut as domui to tame domitum; excipe except quodvis verbum

every verb in *uo*, *quia because* *semper formabit it will always form* *ui in utum ui in utum* : *ut as exui to put off exutum* ; *deme except rui à from ruo to rush* *dans making ruitum* ; *secui to cut vult will have sectum*, *necui to slay* *nectum*, *que and fricui to rub frictum*, *item also miscui to mingle* *mistum*, *et and amicui to clothe* *dat makes amictum* ; *torrui to roast* *habet hath* *tostum*, *docui to teach* *doctum*, *que and tenui to hold* *tentum*, *consului to consult* *consultum*, *alui to feed* *altum* *que and alitum* : *sic so salui to leap* *saltum*, *colui to till* *quoque also ocului to hide* *cultum* ; *pinsui to pound or grind* *habet hath* *pistum*, *rapui to snatch* *raptum*, *que and serui à from sero to set in order* *vult will have* *sertum*, *sic so quoque also texui to weave* *habet hath* *textum*.

Sed but hæc these verbs *mutant change* *ui in sum ui into sum* : *nam for censeo to judge* *habet hath* *censum*, *cellui to break* *celsum*, *meto messui to reap* *habet hath* *quoque also messum* : *item also nexui to knit* *nexum*, *sic so quoque also pexui to comb* *habet hath* *pexum*.

Xi, fit is made ctum : *ut as vinxi to bind* *vinctum* : *quinque five abjiciunt n cast away n* ; *ut as finxi to form or fussion* *fictum*, *minxi to make water* *mictum* ; *adjice add* *pinxi to paint* *dans giving* *pictum*, *strinxi to bind fast* *strictum*, *quoque also rinxi to grin* *rictum*.

Flexi to bend, plexi to twist, fixi to fasten, dant make xum ; *et and fluo to flow* *fluxum*.

QUODQUE *compositum supinum every compound supine* *formatur is formed* *ut as simplex the simple supine*, *quamvis although eadem syllaba the same syllable* *non stet does not continue* *semper always utriusque to them both*. *Composita the compounds à of tunsum to pound, n dempta by taking away n, muke tusum* ; *à of ruitum to rush, i mediâ the middle letter i dempta being taken away, fit is made rutum* ; *et and quoque also à of saltum to leap sultum*. *Compôsta the compounds à of sero to sow quando when format it forms satum, dant make situm*.

Hæc these supines *captum to take, factum to do, jacum to cast, raptum to snatch, mutant a per e change a into e* ; *et and cantum to sing, partum to bring forth young*,

young, sparsum to sprinkle, carptum to crop, quoque also fartum to stuff.

Verbum *the verb* *edo to eat* *compositum being compounded* *non facit maketh not* *estum, sed but esum;* *unum one* *duntaxat only* *comedo to eat up* *formabit will form* *utrumque both.*

A from nosco to know *duo these two compounds* *tantum only cognitum to know* *et and agnatum to know again* *habentur are found;* *cætera the rest* *dant make notum:* *noscitum, jam now est is nullo in usu not in use.*

VERBA in or verbs ending in or admittunt *take* *præteritum their preterperfect tense* *ex posteriore supino from the latter supine,* *u verso u being turned per us into us,* *et and sum vel fui consociato being added;* *ut as à of lectu to be read lectus sum vel or fui I have been read.* *At but horum of these verbs nunc sometimes est there is deponens a deponent, nunc sometimes est there is commune a common notandum to be noted.*

Nam *for labor to slide* *dat makes lapsus;* *patior to suffer* *passus, et and ejus nata its compounds;* *ut as compatiор to suffer together* *compassus, que and perpetior to endure* *formans forming* *percessus;* *fateor to own* *dat makes fassus, et and indè nata its compounds,* *ut as confiteor to confess* *confessus, que and diffiteor to deny* *formans forming* *diffessus:* *gradior to step* *dat makes gressus,* *et and indè nata its compounds;* *ut as digredior to step aside* *digressus;* *junge add faticor to be weary* *fessus sum,* *metior to measure* *mensus sum, et and utor to use* *usus.*

Ordior *pro for texo to weave* *dat makes orditus, pro for incepto to begin* *orsus, nitor to strive* *nitus vel or nixus sum, et and ulciscor to revenge* *ultus, simul also irascor to be angry* *iratus, atque and reor to suppose* *ratus sum, obliviscor to forget* *vult will have* *oblitus sum, fruor to enjoy* *optat chooseth* *fructus vel or fruitus, jungs add misereri to have pity* *misertus.*

Tuor *to see* *et and tueor to defend* *non vult will not have* *tutus, sed but tuitus sum;* *adde add locutus à of loquor to speak,* *et and adde add secutus à of sequor to follow.*

Exerior to try facit *maketh* expertus ; paciscor to make a barguin gaudet *will formare* form pactus sum, nanciscor to get nactus, apiscor to obtain quod which est is *vetus* verbum *an old verb* aptus sum, unde from whence adipiscor to get adeptus.

Junge add queror to complain questus, junge add profiscor to go profectus, expurgiscor to awake experectus sum ; et and quoque also hæc these, comminiscor to devise commentus, nassor to be born natus, que and morior to die mortuus, atque and orior to rise, quod which facit makes præteritum its preterperfect tense ortus.

HÆC these verbs habent have præteritum a preterperfect tense activæ of the active et and passivæ vocis of the passive voice : ceno to sup format tibi formeth you cœnavi et and cœnatus sum, juro to swear juravi et and juratus, que and poto to drink potavi et and potus, titubo to stumble titubavi vel or titubatus.

Prandeo to dine prandi et and pransus sum ; placeo to please dat makes placui et and placitus, suesco to accustom vult will have suevi atque and suetus.

Nubo to be married nupsi que and nupta sum, mereor to deserve meritus sum vel or merui ; adde add, libet it pleasest, libuit libitum, et and adde add, licet it is lawful, quod which makes licuit licitum ; tædet it wearieh, quod which dat makes tæduit et and pertæsum ; adde add pudet it shameth faciens making puduit que and puditum, atque and piget it grieveth quod which tibi format forms you piguit que and pigitum.

NEUTRO-PASSIVUM a neuter-passive verb format tibi forms you præteritum its preterperfect tense sic thus ; gaudeo to be glad gavisus sum, fido to trust fisus, et and audeo to dare ausus sum, fio to be made factus, soleo to be wont solitus sum.

FUGIUNT these verbs want præteritum the preterperfect tense, vergo to bend, ambigo to doubt, glisco to spread, fatisco to chink, polleo to be powerful, nideo to shine : ad hæc add to these inceptiva verbs inceptive ; ut as, puerasco to grow towards childhood ; et and passiva verbs

verbs passive, quibus activa whose actives caruere want supinis their supines; ut as, metuor to be feared, timeor to be feared: meditativa omnia all meditatives præter besides parturio to be in labour, esurio to be hungry, quæ duo which two servant keep præteritum their preterperfect tense.

HÆC verba *these verbs* raro *seldom* aut *or* nunquam *never* retinebunt *will have* supinum *their supine*; lambo *to lick*, mico micui *to glitter*, rudo *to hray as an ass*, scabo *to claw*, parco pepercic *to spare*, dispesco *to drive from pasture*, posco *to require*, disco *to learn*, compesco *to restrain*, quinisco *to nod the head*, dego *to live*, ango *to throttle*, sugo *to suck*, lingo *to lick*, ningo *to snow*, que and satago *to be busy*, psallo *to play on an instrument*, volo *to be willing*, nolo *to be unwilling*, malo *to be more willing*, tremo *to tremble*, strideo strido *to squeak*, flaveo *to be yellow*, liveo *to be black and blue*, avet *to covet*, paveo *to dread*, conniveo *to wink*, fervet *to be hot*.

Compositum a compound à of nuo to nod; ut, as, renuo to refuse: à of cado to fall; ut as, accido to fall upon, præter except occido to fall down, quod which facit makes occasum, que and recido to fall back recasum: respuo to refuse, linquo to leave, luo to pay, metuo to fear, cluo to shine or to be famous, frigeo to be cold, calveo to be bald, et and sterto to snore, timeo to fear: sic so luceo to shine, et and arceo to drive away, cūjus composita whose compounds habent have ercitum; sic so nata the compounds à of gruo to cry like a crane, ut as, ingruo to invade, et and quæcunque neutra whatever neutrals secundæ of the second conjugation formantur are formed in ui: excipias you may except, oleo to smell, doleo to be in pain, placeo to please, que and taceo to hold one's peace, pareo to obey, item also careo to want, noceo to hurt, jaceo to lie down, que and lateo to lie hid, et also valeo to be in health, caleo to be hot; namque for hæc these verbs gaudent supino have their supines.

S Y N T A X I S

CONSTRUED.

VERBUM personale *a verb personal* concordat *agrees* cum nominativo *with its nominative case* numero in *number* et *and* persona *person*: ut *as*, Via *the way* ad bonos mores *to good manners* est *is* nunquam *never* sera *too late*.

Nominativus *the nominative case* pronominum *of pronouns* raro exprimitur *is seldom expressed* nisi *unless* gratia *for the sake* distinctionis *of distinction*, aut *or* emphasis *energy of expression*: ut *as*, Vos *ye* damnatis *have condemned me*: quasi *as though* dicat *he should say*, præterea *nemo no one else*. Tu *thou* es *art* patronus *our patron*, tu *you* parens *our father*, si *if* tu deseris *you forsake us*, perimus *we are undone*: quasi *as though* dicat *he should say*, tu *you* es *are* patronus *our patron* præcipue *in a particular manner*, et *and* præ *aliis beyond all others*. Fertur *he is reported* designasse *to have committed* atrocia flagitia *horrid crimes*.

Aliquando *sometimes* oratio *a sentence* est *is* nominativus *the nominative case* verbo *to a verb*: ut *as*, Didiisse *to have learnt* ingenuas artes *the liberal sciences* fideliter *thoroughly* emollit *softens* much mores *men's manners*, nec sinit *and suffers them not* esse *to be* feros *brutul*.

Aliquando *sometimes* adverbium *an adverb* cum *genitivo a genitive case*: ut *as*, Partim virorum *part of the men* ceciderunt *were slain* in bello *in the war*.

VERBA *verbs* infinitivi *modi of the infinitive mood* frequenter *often* statuunt *set* ante se *before them* accusativum *an accusative case* pro *instead of* nominativo *a nominative*, coniunctione *the conjunction* quod, vel *or* ut *that* omissa *being left out*; ut *as*, Gaudeo *I am glad* te redisse *that you are returned* incolumem *safe*.

Verbum *a verb* positum *placed* inter *between* duos nominativos *two nominative cases* diversorum numerorum *of*

of different numbers potest *may* concordare *agree* cum with alterutro either of them: ut *as*, Iræ the quarrels amantium of lovers est is integratio the renewing amoris of love. Pectus her breast quoque also fiunt becomes robora oak.

Nomen a noun multitudinis of multitude singulare of the singular number quandoque sometimes jungitur is joined verbo plurali to a verb plural: ut *as*, Pars part of them abierte are gone. Uterque both luduntur are deceived dolis with tricks.

Impersonalia verbs impersonal non habent have not nominativum a nominative case præcedentem going before them: ut *as*, Tædet me I am weary vitæ of my life. Pertæsum est I am quite sick conjugii of wedlock.

ADJECTIVA adjectives, participia participles, et and pronomina pronouns concordant agree cum with substantivo the substantive genere in gender, numero in number, et and casu in case: ut *as*, Rara avis an uncommon bird in terris in the world, que and simillima very much like nigro cygno a black swan.

Aliquando sometimes oratio a sentence supplet supplies locum the place substantivi of a substantive, adjectivo the adjective posito being put in neutro genere in the neuter gender: ut *as*, Audito it being heard regem that the king proficisci was set out Doroberniam for Dover.

RELATIVUM a relative concordat agrees cum with antecedente its antecedent genere in gender, numero number, et and personâ person: ut *as*, Quis who est is vir bonus a good man? Qui he who servat keeps consulta the decrees patrum of the senators, qui he who keeps leges the laws juraque and ordinances.

Aliquando sometimes oratio a sentence ponitur is put pro for antecedente the untecedent: ut *as*, Veni I came ad eam to her in tempore in season, quod which est is rerum omnium primum the main business of all.

Relativum a relative collocatum placed inter between duo substantiva two substantives diversorum generum of different genders et and numerorum numbers concordat.

agrees interdum sometimes cum with posteriore the latter substantive: ut *as*, Homines *men* tuentur *regard* illum globum *that globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth*.

Aliquando sometimes relativum a relative concordat agrees cum with primitivo *the primitive*, quod which subauditur is understood in possessivo in the possessive: ut *as*, Omnes *all men* dicere *said* omnia bona *all hopeful things*, et *and* laudare *extolled* meas fortunas *my fortune* qui haberem *who had* gnatum *a son* præditum *endued* tali ingenio *with such a disposition*.

Si if nominativus a nominative case interponatur is put between relativo the relative et and verbo the verb, relativum the relative regitur is governed à verbo by the verb, aut or ab aliâ dictione by some other word quæ which locatur is placed in oratione in the sentence cum verbo with the verb: ut *as*, Gratia *thanks* abest *are lost* ab officio *in a kindness* quod which mora *delay* tardat *keeps back*. Cujus numen *whose deity* adoro *I adore*.

QUUM when duo substantiva two substantives diversæ significationis of a different signification concurrunt meet together, posterius the latter ponitur is put in genitivo in the genitive case: ut *as*, Amor *the love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases* quantum *as much as* ipsa pecunia *the money itself* crescit *increases*.

Hic genitivus this genitive case aliquando sometimes vertitur is changed in dativum into the dative: ut *as*, Est *he is* pater *the father* urbi *of the city* que *and* maritus *the husband* urbi *of the city*.

Adjectivum an adjective in neutro genere of the neuter gender positum put sine substantivo without a substantive, postulat requires aliquando sometimes genitivum a genitive case: ut *as*, Paululum pecuniae *a very little money*.

Interdum sometimes genitivus a genitive case ponitur tantum is set alone, priore substantivo the former substantive subauditio being understood per ellipsis in the figure ellipsis: ut *as*, Ubi *when* veneris *you are come* ad *Dianæ*.

Dianæ to Diana's, ito turn ad dextram to the right hand: subaudi understand templum the word temple.

Duo substantiva two substantives ejusdem rei respecting the same thing ponuntur are put in eodem casu in the same case: ut as, Opes riches irritamenta malorum the incentives of vice effodiuntur are dug out of the earth.

Laus the praise, vituperium the dispraise, vel or qualitas the quality rei of a thing ponitur is put in ablativo in the ablative case, etiam also genitivo the genitive: ut as, Puer a boy ingenui vultus of an ingenuous aspect, que and ingenui pudoris ingenuous modesty. Vir a man nullâ fide of no integrity.

Opus need et and usus need exigunt require ablativum an ablative case: ut as, Opus est nobis we have need of auctoritate tuâ your authority. Non accepit he would not receive pecuniam money ab iis from them quâ of which sibi esset he had nihil usus no need.

Autem but opus videtur seems quandoque sometimes poni to be put adjectivè adjectively pro for necessarius necessary: ut as, Dux a leader et and auctor an adviser est is opus necessary nobis for us.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives quæ which significant signify desideriūm desire, notitiam knowledge, memoriam memory, timorem fear; atque and contraria the contraries iis to these, exigunt require genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Natura the nature hominum of men est is avida fond novitatis of novelty. Menſ a mind præscia foreknowing futuri what is to come. Esto be thou memor mindful brevis ævi of the shortness of life. Imperitus rerum unacquainted with the world. Rudis belli ignorant of war. Timidus deorum fearing the gods. Impavidus sui fearless of himself. Cum plurimis aliis with many other adjectives quæ which denotant declare affectionem a passion animi of the mind.*

Adjectiva verbalia adjectives derived from verbs in ax ending in ax etiam also exigunt require genitivum a genitivum

nitive case : ut *as*, *Audax ingenii bold by nature*. *Tempus time edax is the consumer rerum of all things*.

Nomina partitiva *nouns partitive*, numeralia *nouns of number*, comparativa *nouns comparative* et *and superlativa superlatives*, et also quædam *adjectiva some adjectives* posita *put partitivè partitively* exigunt *require genitivum a genitive case à quo from which* et *also mutuantur they take genus their gender* : ut *as*, *Accipe take utrum horum which of these two mavis you had rather*. *Romulus, fuit was primus the first Romanorum regum of the Roman kings*. *Dextra the right est is fortior the stronger manuum of the hands*. *Medius the middle est is longissimus the longest digitorum of the fingers*. *Sancte deorum O sacred deity, sequimur we follow te you*.

Autem *but usurpantur they are used* et *also cum with his præpositionibus these prepositions à, ab, de, è, ex, inter, ante* : ut *as*, *Tertius the third ab Æneâ from Aeneas*. *Solus the only one de superis of the gods above*. *Alter one è vobis of you es deus is a god*. *Primus first inter among omnes all*. *Primus the first ante omnes before all*.

Secundus, aliquando *sometimes* exigit *requires* *dativum u dative case* : ut *as*, *Secundus inferior haud ulli to none veterum of the ancients virtute in valour*.

Interrogativum *an interrogative et and ejus redditivum the word which answers it erunt shall be ejusdem casus of the same case et and temporis tense, nisi except voces words variæ constructionis of a different construction adhibeantur be made use of* : ut *as*, *Quarum rerum of what things est is there nulla satietas no fulness*? *Divitiarum of riches*. *Ne whether accusas do you accuse me furti of theft, an or homicidii of murder*? *Utroque of both*.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives quibus whereby* *commodum advantage, incommodum disadvantage, similitudo likeness, dissimilitudo unlikeness, voluptas pleasure, submissio submission, aut or relatio relation ad aliquid to any*

any thing significatur is signified, postulant require dativum a dative case: ut as, Si if facis you take care ut that sit he be idoneus serviceable patriæ to his country, utilis useful agris to the lands. Turba a multitude gravis troublesome paci to peace que and inimica averse placidæ quieti to gentle ease. Similis like patri his father. Color the colour qui which erat was albus white est is nunc now contrarius contrary albo to white. Jucundus pleasant amicis to his friends. Supplex submissive omnibus to all. Poëta a poet est is finitimus very near akin oratori to an orator.

Huc hither referuntur are referred nomina nouns composita compounded ex præpositione con of the preposition con: ut as, Contubernalis a comrade, commilito a fellow-soldier, conservus a fellow-servant, cognatus a kinsman by birth, &c.

Quædam some ex his of these adjectives quæ which significant signify similitudinem likeness, junguntur are joined etiam also genitivo to a genitive case: ut as, Quen he whom metuis you fear erat was par like hujus this man. Es you are similis like domini your master.

Communis common, alienus strange, immunis free, junguntur are joined genitivo to a genitive case, dativo to a dative; et also ablativo to an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Est it is commune common animantium omnium to all living creatures. Mors death communis est is common omnibus to all. Hoc this est is commune common mihi tecum to me and you. Non aliena not unfit for consilii the design. Alienus ambitioni an enemy to ambition. Non alienus not averse à studiis to the studies Scævolæ of Scævola. Dabitur it shall be granted vobis to you esse to be immunibus free from hujus mali this calamity. Caprificus the wild fig-tree est is immunis free omnibus to them all. Sumus we are immunes free ab illis malis from those evils.

Natus born, commodus convenient, incommodus inconvenient, utilis useful, inutilis useless, vehemens earnest, aptus fit, cum multis aliis with many others, junguntur

guntur *are joined* interdum *sometimes* etiam *also* accusativo *to an accusative case* cum with præpositione *a preposition*: ut *as*, *Natus born ad gloriam for glory*. *Utilis profitable ad eam rem to that business*.

Verbalia *adjectives derived from verbs* in *bilis ending in bilis accepta taken passivè passively*, et *also* participia *participles made adjectives* in *dus ending in dus*, postulant *require* *dativum a dative case*: ut *as*, *Lucus iners a thick grove penetrabilis penetrable nulli astro by no star*. *O Juli, O Julius, memorande worthy to be mentioned mihi by me post after nulos sodales none of my acquaintance*.

MENSURA *the measure magnitudinis of quantity* subjicitur *is put after* *adjectivis adjectives* in *accusativo in the accusative case*, *ablativo the ablative*, et *and* *genitivo the genitive case*: ut *as*, *Turris a tower alta high centum pedes a hundred feet*. *Fons a fountain latus wide pedibus tribus three feet, altus deep triginta thirty*. *Area a floor lata broad pedum denum ten feet*.

Accusativus *an accusative case aliquando sometimes* subjicitur *is put after* *adjectivis adjectives* et *and* *participiis participles*, ubi *where* præpositio *secundum the preposition* secundum videtur *seems* subintelligi *to be understood*: ut *as*, *Similis like deo to a god os as to his countenance que and humeros his shoulders*. *Demissus cast down vultum as to his look*.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives quæ which pertinent relate ad copiam to plenty, ve or egestatem want, exigunt require interdum sometimes ablativum an ablative, interdum sometimes genitivum a genitive case*: ut *as*, *Dives rich equum in horses, dives rich pictai vestis in embroidered garments, et auri and gold*. *Amor love est is fecundissimus very full of et both melle honey et and felle gall*. *Expers fraudis void of deceit*. *Beatus abounding gratia in favour*.

Adjectiva *adjectives et and substantiva substantives regunt govern ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying causam the cause, et and formam the form, vel*

vel *or* modum *the manner* rei *of a thing* : ut *as*, Pallidus pale irâ *with anger*. Grammaticus *a grammarian* nomine *in name*, re *in reality* barbarus *a barbarian*. Cæsar, Trojanus *a Trojan* origine *by descent*.

Dignus *worthy*, indignus *unworthy*, præditus *endued*, captus *disabled*, contentus *content*, extorris *banished*, fretus *relying upon*, liber *free*, cum *with* adjectivis *adjectives* significantibus *signifying* pretium *price*, exigunt require *ablativum an ablative case* : ut *as*, Es *you are* dignus *worthy* odio *of hatred*. Qui haberem I *who had* gnatum *a son* præditum *endued* tali ingenio *with such a disposition*. Oculis capti talpæ *the blind moles* fodere *have dug* cubilia *their holes*. Abi go *your way* contentus *contented* sorte tuâ *with your lot*. Animus *a mind* liber *free from* terrore *fear*. Venale *to be purchased* gemmis *with jewels* nec *nor* auro *with gold*.

Nonnulla *some* horum *of these* admittunt *admit* interdum *sometimes* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut *as*, Indignus *unworthy* of magnorum avorum *my great ancestors*. Carmina *verses* digna *worthy* of deæ *a goddess*. Extorris *banished* regni *the kingdom*.

Comparativa *comparatives*, cùm *when* exponantur *they may be explained* per *by* quam *than*, admittunt *receive* ablativum *an ablative case* : ut *as*, Argentum silver est is vilius *of less value* auro *than gold*, aurum gold virtutibus *than virtue* : id est *that is*, quam *than* aurum gold, quam *than* virtutes *virtue*.

Tanto *by so much*, quanto *by how much*, hoc *by this*, eo *by this*, et *and* quo *by which*, cum *with* quibusdam aliis *some others*, quæ *which* significant *signify* mensuram *the measure* excessus *of exceeding*; item also *estate* *by age*, et *and* natu *by birth*, junguntur *are joined* sæpe often comparativis *to comparatives* et *and* superlativis *to superlatives* : ut *as*, Tanto *by so much* pessimus poëta he is *the worst poet* omnium *of all*, quanto *by how much* tu *you are* optimus patronus *the best advocate* omnium *of all*. Quo plus habent *the more* they have eo plus cupiunt *the more* they desire. Major *estate* *the elder*, et *and* maxima *maxima*

mus ætate *the eldest*. Major natu et *and maximus natu* have the same construction.

MEI of me, tui of thee or you, sui of himself, nostri of us, vestri of you, genitivi the genitive cases primitivorum of their primitives, ponuntur are used cum when persona a person significatur is signified: ut as, *Languet she languishes* desiderio tui for want of you. Que and pars part tui of you lateat may lie clausa shut up corpore meo in my body. Imago nostri the picture of our person.

Meus mine, tuus thine, suus his own, noster ours, vester yours, ponuntur are used cum when actio action vel or possessio the possession rei of a thing significatur is signified: ut as, Favet he favours desiderio tuo your desire. Imago nostra our picture: id est, that is, quam which nos we possidemus do possess.

Hæc possessiva these pronouns possessive, meus mine, tuus thine, suus his own, noster ours, et and vester yours, recipiunt take post se after them hos genitivos these genitive cases; ipsius of himself, solius of him alone, unius of one, duorum of two, trium, of three, &c. omnium of all, plurium of more, paucorum of few, cujusque of every one, et and also genitivos the genitive cases participiorum of participles, qui which referuntur are referred ad primitivum to the primitive word subauditum understood: ut as, *Dixi I affirmed* rempublicam that the state esse salvain was preserved mea unius operæ by my single service. Meum solius peccatum my offence alone non potest cannot corrigi be amended. Cum whereaus nemo nobody legit reads scripta mea timentis the writings of me fearing recitare to rehearse them vulgè publicly. Ceperis conjecturam you may guess de studio tuo ipsius by your own study. Præstantior more excellent in suâ cujusque laude each in his own skill. Nostrâ omnium memoriâ in the memory of us all. Respondet he answers vestris paucorum laudibus the praises of you few.

Sui of himself et suus his own sunt are reciproca reciprocals,

reciprocals, hoc est that is, reflectuntur they have relation semper always ad id to that quod which præcessit went before præcipuum most to be noted in sententia in the sentence : ut as, Petrus Peter admiratur admires se himself nimium too much. Parcit he spares erroribus suis his own errors. Petrus Peter magnoperè rogat earnestly begs ne se deserat that you would not forsake him.

Hæc demonstrativa these pronouns demonstrative, hic, iste, ille, distinguuntur are distinguished sic thus : hic, demonstrat points to proximum the nearest mihi to me; iste, eum him qui who est is apud te by you; ille, eum him qui who est is remotus at a distance ab utroque from both of us.

Cum when hic, et and ille, referuntur are referred ad duo anteposita to two things or persons going before, hic, plerumque generally refertur is referred ad posterius to the latter, ille, ad prius to the former: ut as, Quocunque which way soever aspicias you look est there is nihil nothing nisi but pontus sea et and aër the air, hic the latter tumidus swelling nubibus with clouds, ille the former minax threatening fluctibus with waves.

VERBA substantiva verbs substantive; ut as, Sum I am, forem I might be, fio I am made, existo I am: Verba passiva verbs passive vocandi of calling: ut as, Nominor I am named, appellor I am called, dico I am said, vocor I am called, nuncupor I am named, et and similia the like iis to them: ut as, Videor I am seen, habeor I am accounted, existimor I am thought; habent have eosdem casus the same cases utrinque on both sides: ut as, Deus God est is suimum bonum the chief good. Perpusilli very little persons vocantur are called nani dwarfs. Fides faith habetur is reckoned fundamentum the foundation religionis nostræ of our religion. Natura nature dedit hath granted omnibus to all esse to be beatis happy.

Item likewise omnia verba all verbs ferè in a manner admitunt admit post se after them adjectivum an adjective quod which concordat agrees cum with nominativo verbi

verbi *the nominative case of the verb*, casu *in case*, generi *gender*, et *and* numero *number*; ut *as*, *Pii pious men orant pray taciti silently*. *Malus pastor a bad shepherd dormit sleeps supinus with his face upwards*.

SUM, postulat *requires* genitivum *a genitive case* quoties *as often as* significat *it signifies* possessionem *possession*, officium *duty*, signum *sign*, aut *or* id *that* quod *which* pertinet *has respect* ad rem *quampiam to any thing*: ut *as*, *Pecus the cattle est is Melibœi Melibœus's*. *Est it is the duty adolescentis of a young man revereri to reverence majores natu his elders*.

Hi nominativi *these nominative cases* excipiuntur *are excepted*: *meum mine, tuum thine, suum his, nostrum our, vestrum your, humanum human, belluimum brutal, et and similia the like*: ut *as*, *Non est meum it becomes not me dicere to speak contra against auctoritatem the authority senatus of the senate*. *Est it is humanum an human frailty irasci to be angry*.

Verba *verbs accusandi of accusing, damnandi of condemning, monendi of warning, absolvendi of acquitting, et and similia the like*, postulant *require* genitivum *a genitive case*, qui *which* significat *signifies* crimen *the charge*: ut *as*, *Oportet it is fit eum that he qui who accusat accuses alterum another probri of dishonesty intueri should look into se ipsum himself*. *Condemnat he condemns generum suum his son-in-law sceleris of wickedness*. *Admoneto illum remind him pristinæ fortunæ of his former condition*. *Absolutus est he is acquitted furti of theft*.

Hic genitivus *this genitive case* vertitur *is changed* aliquando *sometimes* in ablativum *into an ablative*, vel *either* cum præpositione *with a preposition*, vel *or* sine præpositione *without a preposition*: ut *as*, *Putavi I thought te esse admonendum you ought to be put in mind de eâ re of that matter*. *Si if es you are iniquus judex a partial judge in me to me, ego I condemnabo will condemn te you eodem crimine of the same crime*.

Uterque both, nullus none, alter the other, neuter neither

neither of the two, alias another, ambo both, et and superlativus gradus the superlative degree, junguntur are joined verbi to verbs id genus of that kind non nisi only in ablative in the ablative case: ut as, Accusas do you accuse him furti of theft an or stupri dishonesty? utroque, vel or de utroque of both; ambobus, vel or de ambobus of both; neutro, vel or de neutro of neither. Accusaris you are accused de plurimis of very many things simul at once.

Satago to be busy about a thing, misereor, et and miseresco to pity, postulant require genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Is he satagit has his hands full rerum suarum of his own business. Oro I pray you miserere pity laborum tantorum so great distresses; miserere pity animæ a soul ferentis suffering non digna things undeserved. Et and miserescere pity generistui your own family.

Reminiscor to remember, obliviscor to forget, memini to remember, recordor to call to mind, admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case, aut or accusativum an accusative: ut as, Reminiscitur he remembers datae fidei his promise. Est it is proprium the property stultitiae of folly cernere to discern aliorum vitia other men's faults, obliuisci to forget suorum its own. Faciam I will give you cause ut memineris to remember hujus loci this place semper always. Juvabit it will be a pleasure olim hereafter meminisse to call to mind haec these things. Recordor I remember hujus meriti this favour in me towards me. Si if recordor I recollect ritè well audita the things I heard.

Potior to gain or enjoy jungitur is joined aut either genitivo to a genitive case, aut or ablativo to an ablative: ut as, Romani the Romans potiti sunt gained signorum the standards et and armorum the arms. Troes the Trojans egressi being landed potiuntur enjoy optata arenâ the wished for shore.

OMNIA verba all verbs regunt govern dativum a dative case ejus rei of that thing cui to or for which aliquid any thing acquiritur is gotten aut or adimitur is taken away:

away: ut as, Nec seritur there is neither sowing nec metitur nor mowing mihi for me istic in this matter. Quis casus what accident ademit te hath taken thee from mihi me?

VERBA verbs varii generis of various sorts appendent
belong huic regulæ to this rule.

Imprimis in the first place verba verbs significantia
signifying commodum advantage aut or incommodum
disadvantage regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut
as, Non potes you cannot commodare serve nec nor in-
commodare disserve mihi me.

Ex his of these, juvo to help, lædo to hurt, delecto to
delight, et and alia quedam some other verbs exigunt re-
quire accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Quies rest
plurimum juvat very much delights fessum a wearied
man.

Verba verbs comparandi of comparing regunt govern
dativum a dative case: ut as, Sic thus solebam was I
used componere to compare magna great things parvis
to small.

Verò but interdum sometimes ablativum an ablative
case cum præpositione cum with the preposition cum:
interdum sometimes accusativum an accusative case cum
with præpositionibus ad et inter, the prepositions ad and
inter: ut as, Comparo I compare Virgilium Virgil cum
with Homero Homer. Si if comparatur he is compared
ad eum to him nihil est he is nothing. Hæc these
things non sunt are not conferenda to be compared
inter se one with another.

Verba verbs dandi of giving et and reddendi of restor-
ing regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Fortuna
fortune dat giveth nimis too much multis to many, satis
enough nulli to nobody. Est he is ingratus ungrateful,
qui who non reponit does not return gratiam thanks bene-
merenti to his benefactor.

Verba verbs promittendi of promising ac and solvendi
of paying regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as,
Quæ which things promitto I promise tibi to you, ac and
recipio engage esse observaturum to observe sanctis-
simè

simè most religiously. Numeravit *he paid mihi me* ~~ses~~ alienum *the debt.*

Verba verbs imperandi of commanding et and nuntiandi of telling regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Pecunia money collecta gathered up imperat commands aut or servit serves cuique every man. Sæpe often videto take care quid dicas what you say de quoque viro of any man, et and cui to whom.

Excipe except rego to rule, guberno to govern, quæ which verbs habent have accusativum an accusative case: tempero to rule, et and moderor to rule, quæ which nunc sometimes habent have dativum a dative case, nunc sometimes accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Luna the moon regit rules menses the months. Deus ipse God himself gubernat governs orbem the world. Ipse he temperat sibi has the command of himself. Sol the sun temperat orders omnia all things luce by its light. Hic he moderatur manages equos his horses, qui who non moderabitur will not govern iræ his passion.

Verba verbs fidendi of trusting regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Decet it is fit committere to commit nil nothing nisi but lene what is soft vacuis venis to the empty veins.

Verba verbs obsequendi of complying with et and repugandi of opposing, regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Pius filius a dutiful son semper always obtemperat obeys patri his father. Fortuna fortune repugnat opposes ignavis precibus the prayers of the slothful.

Verba verbs minandi of threatening et and irascendi of being angry, regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Minitatus est he threatened mortem death utrique to both. Nihil est there is no reason quod succenseam why I should be angry adolescenti with the young man.

Sum cum compositis with its compounds, præter except possum, regit governs dativum a dative case: ut as, Rex pius a pious king est is ornamentum an ornament reipublicæ to the state. Nec obest it neither hurts nec prodest nor profits mihi me.

Verba verbs composita compounded cum his adverbii with

with these adverbs, bene well, satis enough, male ill; et and cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, fermè for the most part regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Dii may the gods benefaciant do good tibi to thee! Ego I præluxi outshone meis majoribus my ancestors virtute in virtue. Qui who interpestitè out of season adluserit joked upon him occupato when he was busy. Hoc this conductus conduced tuse laudi to your praise. Convixit he lived nobis with us. Subolet uxori my wife has a jealousy jam already quod ego machinor what I am contriving. Antefero I prefer iniquissimam pacem the most unequal peace justissimo bello before the most just war. Postpono I postpone pecuniam money famæ to reputation. Quoniam because ea she potest can obtrudi be thrust nemini upon nobody itur ad me they come to me. Periculum danger impendet hangs over omnibus all. Non solùm interfuit he was not only present his rebus at these things, sed but etiam ulso præfuit he was chief in them.

Non pauca not a few ex his of these aliquoties sometimes mutant change dativum the dative in alium casum into another case: ut as, Alius one præstat exceeds alium another ingenio in ability.

Est, pro for habeo to have, regit governs dativum a dative case: ut as, Namque for est mihi I have pater a father domi at home, est I have injusta noverca a severe step-mother.

Suppetit it sufficeth est is simile like huic to this: ut as, Enim for non est he is not pauper poor cui rerum suppetit usus who has a sufficiency.

Sum, cum multis aliis with many others, admittit admits geminum dativum a double dative case: ut as, Mare the sea est is exitio the destruction avidis nautis of greedy sailors. Speras do you expect fore that should be laudi a credit tibi to yourself quod which vertis you impute vitio as a fault mihi to me?

Est ubi sometimes hic dativus this dative case tibi, aut or sibi, aut or etiam also mihi, additur is added elegantiæ causâ for the sake of elegance in expresion: ut as,

as, *Jugulo I stab hunc this man suo sibi gladio with his own sword.*

VERBA transitiva verbs transitive cujuscunque generis of what kind soever, sive whether activi active, sive or deponentis deponent, sive or communis common, exigunt require accusativum an accusative case: ut as, *Fugito avoid percontatorem an inquisitive person, nam for idem the same est is garrulus a blab.* Aper the boar depopulatur lays waste agros the fields. Imprimis in the first place venerare deos address yourself to the gods.

Verba neutra verbs neuter habent have accusativum an accusative case cognatae significationis of a like signification: ut as, *Servit he serves duram servitatem a hard servitude.*

Sunt there are some verbs quæ which habent have accusativum an accusative case figuratè by a figure: ut as, *Nec nor vox does your voice sonat sound hominem like a human creature, ô dea O a goddess ! certè doubtless.*

Verba verbs rogandi of asking, docendi of teaching, vestiendi of clothing, celandi of concealing, ferè commonly regunt govern duplēcēm accusativum two accusative cases: ut as, *Tu modò do but you posce ask veniam pardon deos of the gods.* Dedocebo I will unteach te you istos mores those manners. Ridiculum est it is a jest te for you admonere me to remind me istuc of that. Induit se he put on calceos the shoes quos which exuerat he had put off priùs before. Consuefecī I have accustomed filium my son ne eelēt not to conceal ea these things me from me.

Verba verbs hujusmodi of this sort habent have post se after them accusativum an accusative case etiam also in passivā voce in the passive voice: ut as, *Posceris you are required to sacrifice exta the entrails bovis of a heifer.*

Nomina appellativa nouns appellative ferè commonly adduntur are added cum with prepositione a preposition verbis to verbs quæ which denotant denote motum motion: ut as, *Ibant they went ad templum to the temple Palladis of Pallas.*

QUODVIS verbum every verb admittit admits ablativum

tivum *an ablative case* significantem *signifying instrumentum the instrument, aut or causam the cause, aut or modum the manner actionis of an action* : ut as, *Hi these certant endeavour defendere to defend themselves jaculis with darts, illi they saxis with stones. Vehementer excanduit he turned excessively pale ira with anger. Peregit he performed rem the matter mira celeritate with wonderful dispatch.*

Nomen pretii *a noun of price* subjicitur *is put after* quibusdam verbis *some verbs* in ablative casu *in the ablative case* : ut as, *Non emerim I would not purchase it teruncio at a farthing, seu or vitiosâ nuce a rotten nut. Ea victoria that victory stetit cost Pœnus the Carthaginians multorum sanguine much blood ac and vulneribus wounds.*

Vili *at a low rate*, paulo *for little*, minimo *for very little*, magno *for much*, nimio *for too much*, plurimo *for very much*, dimidio *for half*, duplo *for twice as much*, ponuntur *are put* saepe *often* per se *by themselves*, voce pretio *the word* pretio *(price)* subauditâ *being understood* : ut as, *Triticum wheat venit is sold vili at a low rate.*

Hi genitivi *these genitive cases* positi *put* sine substantiis *without substantives* excipiuntur *are excepted*; tanti *for so much*, quanti *for how much*, pluris *for more*, minoris *for less*, tantidem *for just so much*, quantivis *for as much as you please*, quantilibet *the same*, quanticunque *for how much soever*: ut as, *Eris you will be tanti of so much value aliis to others quanti as fueris you are tibi to yourself.*

Flocci *of a lock of wool*, nauci *of a nutshell*, nihil *of nothing*, pili *of a hair*, assis *of a penny*, hujus *of this*, teruncii *of a farthing*, adduntur *are added* peculiariter *very properly* verbis *to verbs* aestimandi *of esteeming* : ut as, *Ego illum flocci pendo I don't value him of a straw, nec hujus facio nor do I regard him this, qui who me pili aestimat esteems me not a hair.*

Verba verbs abundandi *of abounding*, implendi *of filling*, onerandi *of loading*, et and his diversa *their contraries*, junguntur *are joined* ablative *to an ablative case* : ut as, *Antipho, abundas you abound amore with what you love.*

Sylla explevit *filled* omnes *suos* *all his army* divitiis *with riches*. Quibus mendacis *with what lies* homines levissimi *have the vainest men* onerarunt *loaded to you*? Expedi *clear to yourself* hoc crimine *of this charge*.

Ex quibus *of which* quædam *some verbs* nonnunquam *sometimes* regunt *govern* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Impletur *they are filled* veteris Bacchi *with old wine*, que *and* pinguis ferinæ *fat venison*. Quasi *as though* tu indigetas *you have need of* hujus patris *his father*.

Fungor *to discharge*, fruor *to enjoy*, utor *to use*, vescor *to live upon*, dignor *to think one's self worthy*, muto *to change*, communico *to communicate*, supersedeo *to pass by*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case*: ut *as*, Qui *he who* volet *shall desire* adipisci *to get* veram gloriam *true glory* fungatur *should discharge* officiis *the duties* justitiae *of justice*. Est *it is* optimum *an excellent* thing frui *to profit* alienâ *insaniâ* *by the madness of others*. Juvat *'tis of service* si *if* utare *you can use* animo bono *a good courage* in re mala *in a bad matter*. Vescor *I eat* carnibus *flesh*. Evidem *truly* hand dignor me *I don't think myself worthy* tali honore *of such honour*. Diruit *he pulls down*, ædificat *he builds*, mutat *he changes* quadrata *square things* rotundis *for round*. Communica-
bo te *I will give you access* mensâ *meâ* *to my table*. Supersedendum est *we must forbear* multitudine *a multitude* verborum *of words*.

Mereor *to deserve*, cum adverbii *with these adverbs* bene *well*, male *ill*, melius *but*, pejus *worse*, optimè *very well*, pessimè *very ill*, jungit *is joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* cum præpositione de *with the preposition* de: ut *as*, Nunquam meritus est *he never deserved* bene *well* de me *of me*.

Quædam verba *certain verbs* accipiendi *of receiving*, distandi *of being distant*, et and auferendi *of taking away*, aliquando *sometimes* junguntur *are joined* dativo *to a dative case*: ut *as*, Celata virtus concealed virtue paulum distat *differs little* sepultæ inertiae *from lifeless sloth*. Eripe te moræ *throw off* delay.

Ablativus *an ablative case* sumptus *taken* absolutè *absolutely*

solutely additur is put quibuslibet verbis to any verbs: ut as, Christus Christ natus est was born imperante Augusto when Augustus was emperor, crucifixus was crucified imperante Tiberio when Tiberius was emperor. Me duce I being your guide eris you will be tutus safe.

Ablativus an ablative case partis of the part affectæ affected, et and poëticè by the poets accusativus an accusative, additur is added verbis quibusdam to some verbs: ut as, Ægrotat he is sick animo in mind magis more quam than corpore in body. Candet dentes his teeth are white. Rubet capillos his hair is red.

Quædam some of these verbs usurpantur are used etiam also cum genitivo with a genitive case: ut as, Facis you act absurdè absurdly qui who angas tormentest te yourself animi in mind.

ABLATICUS an ablative case agentis of the doer additur is added passivis to verbs passive, sed but præpositione with the preposition à vel or ab, antecedente going before; et and also interdum sometimes dativus a dative case: ut as, Laudatur he is praised ab his by these, culpatur he is blamed ab illis by those. Honesta things honest non occulta not things hidden quæruntur are aimed at bonis viris by good men.

Cæteri casus the other cases manent continue in passivis in verbs passive, qui which fuerunt belonged to them activorum as actives: ut as, Accusaris you are accused furti of theft à me by . Habeberis ludibrio you will be made a laughing-stock. Dedoceberis you shall be untaught istos mores those manners à me by me. Privaberis you shall be deprived magistratu of your office.

Vapulo to be beaten, veneo to be sold, liceo to be prized, exulo to be banished, fio to be made, neutro-passiva neuter-passives habent have passivum constructionem a passive construction: ut as, Vapulabis you shall be beaten à præceptore by the master. Malo I had rather spoliari be stript à cive by a citizen quam than venire be sold ab hoste by an enemy. Virtus virtue licet is set parvo pretio at a low price ab omnibus by all. Cur why exultat philosophia

sophia is *philosophy* banished à convivantibus *by persons at feasts?* Quid *what* fiet *will become* ab illo *of him?*

VERBA infinita verbs of the infinitive mood adduntur are put after quibusdam verbis some verbs, participiis participles, et and adjectivis adjectives, et and also substantivis substantives poëticè by the poets: ut *as*, Amor love jussit commanded me scribere to write quæ *what* things puduit *I was ashamed* dicere to speak. Jussus being ordered confundere foedus to violate the treaty. Erat *he was* tum then dignus worthy amari to be loved. Tempus *it is time* tibi for you abire to be gone.

Verba infinita verbs of the infinitive mood interdum sometimes ponuntur are put sola alone per ellipsis in by the figure ellipsis: ut *as*, Hinc upon this spargere in vulgum [he began] to scatter abroad voces ambiguæ doubtful sayings, et and conscientius knowing himself guilty quærere to seek arma means to destroy me: incipiebat he began subauditur hic is here understood.

GERUNDIA gerunds et and supina supines regunt govern casus the cases suorum verborum of their own verbs: ut *as*, Efferor *I am transported* studio with desire videndi of seeing patres vestros your fathers. Utendum est we must make use of ætate our time; ætas time præterit passeth away cito pede with a nimble pace. Mittimus we send scitatum to consult oracula the oracle Phœbi of Apollo.

GERUNDIA in di gerunds in di habent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with genitivis genitive cases, et and pendent depend tum both à quibusdam substantivis on certain substantives, tum and also adjectivis adjectives: ut *as*, Innatus amor a natural desire habendi of getting honey urget excites Cecropias apes the Attic bees. Æneas, celsa in puppi in his tall ship jam certus already determined eundi to go.

Gerundia in do gerunds in do obtinent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with ablativis ablative cases; et and also gerundia in dum gerunds in dum cum with accusativis accusative cases: ut *as*, Ratio the means scribendi of writing conjuncta est. is joined.

cum loquendo with speaking. Vitium *the disease* alitur *is nourished*, que *and* vivit *lives* tegendo *by being concealed*. Locus *a place* amplissimus *very honourable* ad agendum *to plead in*.

Cum *when* necessitas *necessity* significatur *is signified*, gerundia in dum *gerunds ending in* dum ponuntur *are used* citra præpositionem *without a preposition*, addito verbo est *the verb* est *being added*: ut *as*, Orandum est *we must pray* ut sit *that he may have* mens sana *a sound mind* in corpore sano *in a sound body*. Vigilandum est ei *he must watch* qui *who* cupid *desires* vincere *to conquer*.

Gerundia *gerunds* etiam *also* vertuntur *are changed* in nomina *adjectiva* into nouns *adjective*: ut *as*, Duci *to be persuaded* præmio *by a bribe* ad accusandos homines *to accuse* men est *is proximum next akin* latrocinio *to robbery*.

SUPINUM in um *the supine in um* significat *signifies* activè *actively*, et *and* sequitur *follows* verbum *a verb*, aut *or* participium *a participle*, significans *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place*: ut *as*, Veniunt *they come* spectatum *to see*, veniunt *they come* ut *that ipsæ they themselves* spectentur *may be seen*. Milites *soldiers* missi sunt *were sent* speculatum *to view* arcem *the citadel*.

Supinum in u *the supine in u* significat *signifies* passivè *passively*, et *and* sequitur *follows* nomina *adjectiva nouns adjective*: ut *as*, Quod *that which* est *is* fœdum foul factu *to be done*, idem *the same* est *is* et *also* turpe shameful dictu *to be spoken*.

QUÆ nouns which significant *signify* partem temporis *part of time*, ponuntur *are put* frequentius *more commonly* in ablativo *in the ablative case*: ut *as*, Nemo mortalium *no mortal man* sapit *is wise* omnibus horis *at all hours*.

Autem *but* que nouns which significant *signify* durationem *the duration* temporis *of time*, ponuntur *are put* ferè *commonly* in accusativo *in the accusative case*: ut *as*, Hic *here* jam *from this time* regnabitur *kings shall reign* ter centum totos annos *full three hundred years*.

Dicimus etiam *we say also*: In paucis diebus *within a few days*. De die *by day*. De nocte *by night*. Promitto *I promise*

I promise in diem for a day. Commodo I lend in mensem for a month. Annos ad quinquaginta natus fifty years old. Studui I studied per tres annos three years. Puer a child id aetatis of that age. Non plus not above triduum, aut or triduo, three days. Tertio, vel or ad tertium upon the third calendas, vel or calendarum, of the calends.

SPATIUM the space loci of a place ponitur is put in accusativo in the accusative case, et and interdum sometimes in ablativo in the ablative: ut as, Jam now processeram I had advanced mille passus a mile. Abest he is distant quingentis millibus passuum five hundred miles ab urbe from the city. Item also, Abest he is distant bidui two days' journey: ubi where spatium, vel or spatio, itinere, vel or iter, intelligitur is understood.

OMNE verbum every verb admittit genitivum a genitive case nominis of the name oppidi of a city or town in quo in which actio fit any thing is done; modò so that sit it be primæ of the first vel or secundæ declinationis second declension, et and singularis numeri of the singular number: ut as, Quid faciam what shall I do Romæ at Rome? mentiri nescio I cannot lie.

Hi genitivi these genitive cases, humi upon the ground, domi at home, militiæ in war, belli in war, sequuntur follow formam the construction priorum of proper names; ut as, Arma arms sunt are parvi of little worth foris abroad, nisi unless est there be consilium wisdom domi at home. Fuimus we were semper always unà together militiæ in war, et and domi at home.

Verùm but si if nomen the name oppidi of a city or town fuerit shall be pluralis numeri of the plural number duntaxat only, aut or tertiac declinationis of the third declension, ponitur it is put in ablativo in the ablative case: ut as, Colchus a Colchian, an or Assyrius an Assyrian, nutritus brought up Thebis at Thebes, an or Argis at Argos. Ventosus being inconstant, Romæ at Rome amem I love Tibur Tibur, Tibure at Tibur Romam I love Rome.

Nomen the name loci of a place ferè commonly additur is put after verbis verbs significantibus signifying motum motion.

motion ad locum to a place in accusativo in the accusative case sine præpositione without a preposition: ut as, Concessi I went Cantabrigiam to Cambridge ad capiendum ingenii cultum to get learning.

Ad hunc modum *after this manner* utimur *we use* domus *a house* et *and* rus *the country*: ut as, Capellæ ye she goats saturæ *being full* ite domum *go home*, Hesperus *the evening* venit *approaches*, ite *be gone*. Ego *I* rus ibo *will go into the country*.

Nomen *the name* loci *of a place* ferè *commonly* additur *is put after* verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* à loco *from a place* in ablativo *in the ablative case*, sine præpositione *without a preposition*: ut as, Nisi profectus esses *if you had not gone* Româ *from Rome* antè *before*, relinqueres *you would leave* eam *it* nunc *now*.

IMPERSONALIA *verbs impersonal* non habent *have* not nominativum *a nominative case*: ut as, Juvat *it is pleasant* ire *to go* sub umbras *under the shade*.

Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals*, interest *it concerns*, et *and* refert *it concerns*, junguntur *are joined* quibuslibet genitivis *to any genitive case*, præter *besides* hos ablativos fœmininos *these ablative cases feminine*, meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, et *and* cujā: ut as, Interest *it concerns* magistratus *the magistrate* tueri *to defend* bonos *the good*, animadvertere in malos *to punish the bad*; Tuā refert *it concerns* you nōsse *to know* teipsum *yourself*.

Et also hi genitivi *these genitive cases* adduntur *are added*, tanti *so much*, quanti *how much*, magni *much*, parvi *little*, quanticunque *how much soever*, tantidem *just so much*: ut as, Tanti refert *of such concern* it is agere *to do honesta honest things*.

Impersonalia *verbs impersonal* posita acquisitivè *put acquisitively* postulant *require* dativum *a dative case*: autem *but* quæ *those verbs which* ponuntur *are put transitivè transitively*, accusativum *an accusative case*: ut as, Benefit nobis *we enjoy* blessings à Deo *from God*. Juvat *it delights* me me ire per altum *to travel by sea*.

Verò *but* præpositio ad *the preposition ad* propriè ad-ditur *is peculiarly added* his *to these verbs*, attinet *it belongs*, pertinet *it pertains*, spectat *it concerns* : ut *as*, Vis *would you have me me dicere to speak quod what attinet belongs ad te to you?* Spectat ad omnes *it concerns all men vivere to live bene well.*

Accusativus *an accusative case* cum genitivo *with a genitive* subjicitur *is put after his impersonalibus these verbs impersonal*, pœnitet *it repents*, tædet *it wearies*, miseret, miserescit *it pities*, pudet *it shames*, piget *it grieves*: ut *as*, Si *if vixisset he had lived ad centesimum annum to the hundredth year non pœniteret it would not have repented eum him senectutis suæ of his old age.* Miseret me tui *I pity you.*

Verbum impersonale *a verb impersonal* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice* potest *may accipi be taken* pro singulis personis *for each person* utriusque numeri *of both numbers* eleganter *elegantly* : ut *as*, Statur *it is stood*, id est *that is*, sto *I stand*, stas *thou standest*, stat *he stands*, stamus *we stand*, statis *ye stand*, stant *they stand*: videlicet *that is to say* ex vi *by virtue* casus *of a case* adjuncti added *to it* : ut *as*, Statur *it is stood à me by me*, id est *that is*, sto *I stand* : statur *it is stood ab illis by them*, id est *that is*, stant *they stand*.

PARTICIPIA *participles* regunt *govern* casus *the cases* verborum *of the verbs* à quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived* : ut *as*, Tendens spreading duplices palmas *both his hands ad sidera towards heaven* voce refert *he utters talia such things.*

Dativus *a dative case* interdum *sometimes additur is added* participiis *to participles* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice*, præsertim *especially* si *if* exeunt *they end in* dus : ut *as*, Magnus civis *a mighty citizen* obiit *died*, et *and* formidatus *dreaded* Othoni *by Otho*. Chremes, restat *remains*, qui *who* est *is* exorandus *to be prevailed upon* mihi *by me*.

Participia *participles*, cùm *when* fiunt *they become* nomina *nouns* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case* :

ut *as*, *Appetens greedy alieni of another man's, profusus lavish sui of his own.*

Exosus hating, perosus utterly hating, pertæsus weary of, significantia signifying activè actively, exigunt require accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Astronomus an astronomer exosus hating mulieres women ad unam in general. Perosæ utterly hating immundam segnitiem filthy idleness. Pertæsus weary of ignaviam suam his own sluggishness.

Exosus hated, et and perosus hated to death, significantia signifying passivè passively, leguntur are read cum dativo with a dative case: ut as, Exosus hated Deo of God et and sanctis the saints. Germani the Germans perosi sunt are mortally hated Romanis by the Romans.

Natus born, prognatus born, satus sprung, cretus descended, creatus produced, ortus risen, editus brought forth, exigunt require ablativum an ablative case, et and sæpe oftentimes cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Bona a virtuous lady prognata born bonis parentibus of good parents. Sate O thou who art sprung sanguine from the blood divum of the gods. Quo sanguine from what blood cretus he descended. Venus, orta sprung mari from the sea, præstat mare secures the sea eunti to the passenger. Terræ editus sprung from the earth. Fui I was nympha a nymph edita descended de magno flumine of a great river.

EN, et and ecce, adverbia adverbs demonstrandi of showing, junguntur are joined frequentiùs most commonly nominativo to a nominative case, accusativo to an accusative rariùs but seldom; ut as, En see Priamus Priam. Ecce tibi behold status noster our condition. En behold quatuor aras four altars: Ecce see there duas two tibi for you Daphni Daphnis, que and duo altaria two raised altars Phœbo for Phœbus.

En, et and ecce, exprobrandi adverbs of upbraiding, junguntur are joined soli accusativo to an accusative case only: ut as, En animum et mentem see his mind and disposition. Ecce autem alterum but see the other here.

QUEDAM

QUÆDAM adverbia *certain adverbs* loci of place, temporis of time, et and quantitatis quantity, admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case.

1. Loci of place : ut, as, Ubi where, ubinam where, nusquam no where, ed thither, longè far, quò whither, ubivis any where, huccine what hither, &c. ut as, Ubi gentium where in the world? Invenitur he is found nusquam loci no where. Ventum est men are arrived ed impudentiæ at such a degree of impudence. Quò terrarum to what part of the earth abiit is he gone?

2. Temporis of time : ut as, Nunc now, tunc then, tum then, interea in the mean time, pridie the day before, postridie the day after, &c. ut as, Poteram I could do nihil nothing ampliùs more tunc temporis at that time. quàm than flere weep. Inierunt they began pugnam the battle pridie the day before ejus diei that day. Pridie the day before calendarum, vel or calendas, the calends.

3. Quantitatis of quantity : ut as, Parùm but little, satis enough, abundè abundantly, &c. ut as, Satis eloquentiæ eloquence enough, sapientiæ parùm wisdom little enough. Audivimus we have heard abundè fabularum a world of tales.

Quædam some adverbs admittunt admit casus the cases nominum of the nouns unde from which deducta sunt they are derived : ut as, Vivit he lives inutiliter unprofitably sibi to himself. Mauri the Moors sunt are proximè Hispaniam next to Spain. Melius better vel or optimè the best omnium of all. Morabatur he staid ampliùs opinione longer than was expected.

Adverbia these adverbs diversitatis of diversity, aliter otherwise, secùs otherwise ; et and illa duo these two, antè before, pòst after, non raro junguntur are often joined ablativo to an ablative case : ut as, Multo aliter much otherwise. Paulo secùs little otherwise. Multo antè much before. Paulo pòst a little after. Venit he came longo pòst tempore a long time after.

Instar like or equal to et and ergò for the sake of sumpta being taken adverbialiter as adverbs habent have genitivum.

genitivum *a genitive case post se after them; ut as, Ædificant they build equum a horse divinâ arte by the divine assistance Palladis of Pallas instar montis as big as a mountain. Donari to be rewarded ergo for the sake of virtutis virtue.*

CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ *conjunctions copulative*, et *and* disjunctivæ *disjunctive*, conjungunt couple similés casus *the like cases*, modos *moods*, et *and* tempora tenses: *ut as, Socrates, docuit taught Xenophontem Xenophon et and Platonem Plato. Stat he stands corpore with his body recto upright, que and despicit looks down upon terras the earth. Nec scribit he neither writes nec legit nor reads.*

Nisi *unless* ratio *the reason* variæ constructionis *of a different construction* poscat *requires* it should be aliud otherwise: *ut as, Emi I bought librum a book centuari for a hundred pence et and pluris more. Vixi I lived Romæ at Rome et and Venetiis at Venice. Nisi unless lactasses me you had fed me up amantem being in love, et and produceres drew me on falsa spe with false hope.*

Quàm *the conjunction* quàm, sèpè oftentimes intelligitur *is understood* post *after* ampliùs *more*, plùs *more*, et *and* minùs *less*: *ut as, Sunt there are ampliùs more sex menses than six months. Paulo plùs somewhat more trecenta vehicula than three hundred carriages sunt amissa are lost. Nix the snow nunquam never jacuit lay alta deep minùs less quatuor pedes than four feet.*

QUIBUS modis *to what moods* verborum *of verbs* quædam *certain adverbs* et *and* conjunctiones *conjunctions* congruant *do agree.*

Ne, an, num *whether*, posita *being put* dubitativè *doubtfully*, aut or *or* indefinitè *indefinitely*, junguntur *are joined* subiectivo *to a subjunctive mood*: *ut as, Nihil refert it makes no difference fecerisne whether you have done it an or persuaseris persuaded to it. Vise go see num whether redierit he he returned.*

Dum, pro *for* dummodo *so that* et *and* quousque *until* postulat *requires* subiectivum *a subjunctive mood*: *ut as,*

as, *Dum so that* prosim *I may profit tibi you.* *Dum until* *tertia sestas the third summer* *videtur shall see.* *regnantem him reigning.*

Qui, significans *signifying causam the cause*, *exigit requires* *subjunctivum a subjunctive mood*: *ut as, Es you are stultus a fool qui credas for believing* *hic this fellow.*

Ut, *pro for* *postquam after that*, *sicut as, et and* *quomodo how, jungitur is joined* *indicativo to an indicative mood*: *autem but cum when* *denotat it signifies* *quam although, utpote for us much as, vel or* *finalem causam the final cause, subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood*: *ut as, Ut since that sumus we are in Ponto in Pontus, Ister the Danube* *frigore constitut has stood frozen* *ter three times.* *Ut as tute you yourself es are ita so censes you think* *omnes that all esse are.* *Ut although omnia all things* *contingent should fall out quae which* *volo I would, non possum I cannot* *levari be eased.* *Non est fidendum no trust is to be given tibi to you* *ut qui because toties fefelleris you have so often deceived.* *Dave Davis, oro I intreat te you ut that* *jam now redeat he may return in viam into the way.*

Denique *lastly*, omnes voces *all words* *positae put* *indefinitè indefinitely*, *quales such as* *sunt are these, quis who, quantus how great, quotus how many, &c.* *postulant require* *subjunctivum a subjunctive mood*: *ut as, Video I see cui to what sort of man* *scribam I am writing.* *Quantus how great assurgat he rises up in clypeum against the enemy's shield, quo turbine with what a force torqueat he hurls hastam the lance !*

PRÆPOSITIO *a preposition* *subaudita understood* *interdum sometimes* *facit makes ut that* *ablativus an ablative case* *addatur be added*: *ut as, Habeo I esteem te you loco in the place parentis of a parent, id est that is, in loco.*

Præpositio *a preposition* *in compositione in compositione* *nonnunquam sometimes regit governs* *eundem casum the same case quem which* *regebat it governed et also extra compositionem out of composition*: *ut as, Detrundunt*

dunt *they thrust off* naves *the ships* scopulo *from the rock*. Prætero *I pass by* te *you* insalutatum *unsaluted*.

Verba verbs composita compounded cum with à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in, nonnunquam sometimes repeat repeat easdem præpositiones the same prepositions cum suo casu with their case extra compositionem out of composition, idque and that eleganter elegantly: ut as, Abstinuerunt they abstained à vino from wine.

In, pro for erga towards, contra against, ad to, et and supra above, exigit requires accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Accipit she admits animum mentémque benignam kind thoughts and inclinations in Teucros towards the Trojans. Peccem I should offend in publica commoda against the public good. Hæres an heir quæritur is sought in regnum for the kingdom. Imperium the power Jovis of Jupiter est is reges in ipso over kings themselves.

Sub, cùm when refertur it relates ad tempus to time, ferè commonly jungitur is joined accusativo to an accusative case: ut as, Sub idem tempus about the same time, id est that is, circa, vel or per idem tempus.

Super, pro for ultra beyond, apponitur is put with accusativo an accusative case; pro for de concerning, ablativo with an ablative case: ut as, Proferet he will extend imperium the empire et both super Garamantas beyond the Africans et and Indos the Indians. Rogitans inquiring multa much super Priamo concerning Priam, multa much super Hectore concerning Hector.

Tenus as far as jungitur is joined ablativo to an ablative case et both singulari in the singular number et and plurali plural: ut as, Pube tenus as high as the groin, pectoribus tenus up to the breasts.

At but tantum only genitivo to a genitive case plurali in the plural number, et and semper sequitur it always follows casum suum its case: ut as, Crurum tenus as far as the legs.

INTERJECTIONES interjections non raro ponuntur are often put sine casu without a case: ut as, Connixa having

having yeaned, reliquit she left spem gregis the hope of the flock, ah alas ! silice in nudâ upon the bare flint-stones. Quæ dementia what madness is this, malum with a mischief !

O, exclamantis of one exclaiming, jungitur is joined nominativo to a nominative case, accusativo an accusative, et and vocativo a vocative : ut as, O festus dies O the joyful day hominis of mortal man ! O nimiū fortunatos agricolas O too fortunate husbandmen si nōrint if they knew sua bona their own happiness ! O formose puer O beautiful boy ! ne crede trust not nimiū too much colori to your beauty..

Heu, et and proh alas, junguntur are joined nunc sometimes nominativo to a nominative case, nunc sometimes accusativo to an accusative : ut as, Heu pietas ah his piety ! Heu prisca fides ah the ancient integrity ! Heu stirpem invisam ah the odious stock ! Proh Jupiter O Jupiter ! tu thou, homo man, adigis drivest me me ad insaniam to madness. Proh fidem alas the help deūm of gods atque and hominum of men ! Item also vocativo to a vocative case, Proh sancte Jupiter O sacred Jupiter !

Hei, et and vœ alas, junguntur are joined dativo to a dative case : ut as, Hei mihi woe is me, quod that amor love est is medicabilis curable nullis herbis by no herbs. Vœ misero mihi wretched man that I am, quantâ de spe from how great hope decidi am I fallen !

PROSODIA

CONSTRUED.

PROSODIA prosody est is pars that part Grammaticæ of Grammar, quæ which docet teaches quantitatem the quantity or true sound syllabarum of syllables.

Prosodia prosody dividitur is divided in tres partes into three parts, tonum the tone, spiritum the breathing, et and tempus the time, that is to say, for the pronunciation of a long or short syllable.

Hoc loco *in this place*, visum est nobis *it is thought* most proper tractare *to treat* tantum *only* de tempore of time.

TEMPUS time est is mensura the measure syllabæ proferendæ of a syllable to be uttered, or of the pronouncing of a syllable.

Tempus breve a short time notatur is distinguished sic thus (˘) ut as for example, Dōminūs the Lord; autem but longum a long time sic after this fashion (˘) ut as, cōtrā against.

Pes a foot est is constitutio the placing together duarum syllabarum of two syllables plurimve or more, ex certâ observatione according to the certain observation temporum of the times, or measures of the syllables.

Spondæus a spondee est is dissyllabus a foot of two syllables, ut as, vir-tus virtue.

Dactylus a dactyl est is trisyllabus a foot of three syllables, ut as, scri-be-re to write.

Scansio scanning est is legitima commensuratio the measuring according to rule versūs of a verse in singulos pedes in every one (or each one) of the feet.

Scansioni to scanning a verse accidentū there belong figuræ the figures called Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, et and Cæsura.

Synalœpha, est is elisio the striking out vocalis of a vowel in fine at the end dictionis of a word ante alteram before another vowel in initio at the beginning sequentis of the following word: ut as, vit' viv' are here put pro for vita et and vive, in this verse: Crastina vita to-morrow's life est is nimis sera too late, vive live hodie to-day.

At but heu, et and ð, nunquam intercipiuntur are never struck out (or cast off).

Ecthlipsis, est is, quoties as often as in the letter m perimitur is cut off cum suâ vocali with its vowel, proximâ dictione the next word exorsâ beginning à vocali with a vowel: ut as, Monstr' horrend' inform' pro for monstrum horrendum informe: Monstrum a monster, horrendum horrible, informe mis-shapen, ingens vast, cui lumen ademptum deprived of sight.

Synæresis,

Synæresis, est is *contractio the contraction* duarum syllabarum of two syllables in unam into one: ut *as*, alvearia is pronounced quasi scriptum esset *as if it had been written* alvaria: ut *as*, Seu or whether alvearia the hives texta fuerint were wove lento vimine of the limber osier.

Diæresis, est is ubi when ex una syllabâ of one syllable dissectâ being dissected (or the letters separated) duæ two syllables fiunt are made; ut *as*, evoluisse pro for evoluisse: ut *as*, Debuerunt they ought evoluisse to have unwound suos fusos their spindles.

Cæsura, est is cùm when post pedem absolutum after a perfect foot syllaba brevis a short syllable extenditur is made long in fine dictionis at the end of the word: ut *as*, Inhians intent upon pectoribus the breasts (of the victims) consult she consults spirantia exta their panting entrails.

VERSUS heroicus a heroic verse, qui which dicitur etiam is also called Hexameter an Hexameter, constat consists ex sex pedibus of six feet; Quintus locus the fifth place of the verse peculiaritur peculiarly sibi vindicat claims to itself Dactylum a dactyl, sextus the sixth place requires Spondæum a spondee; reliqui the other places hunc vel illum have this or that foot (either a dactyl or a spondee) prout volumus even as we will: ut *as*, Tityre O Tityrus, tu thou recubans lying along sub tegmine under the covering patulæ fagi of a wide spreading beech-tree.

Spondæus a spondee etiam also aliquando sometimes reperitur is found in quinto loco in the fifth place: ut *as*, Cara soboles thou dear offspring deum of the gods, magnum incrementum the illustrious progeny Jovis of Jupiter.

Ultima syllaba the last syllable cuiuscunque versùs of every verse habetur is accounted communis common.

VERSUS elegiacus an elegiac verse, qui et which also habet hath nomen the name Pentametri of Pentameter, constat consisteth è dupli Penthemimeri of two Penthemimers, quarum prior the former of which comprehendit contains duos pedes two feet, dactylicos dactyls, spondiacos spondees, vel or alterutros either of them, cum syllabâ longâ with a long syllable: altera the other Penthemimerum

themimer etiam contains also duos pedes two feet, sed but omnino dactylicos always (or altogether) dactyls, item likewise cum syllabâ longâ with a long syllable: ut as, Amor love est is res a thing plena full solliciti timoris of anxious fear.

Of the Quantity of the first Syllable.

I. *Vocalis a vowel ante duas consonantes before two consonants, aut or duplicem a double consonant in eâdem dictione in the same word, est is ubique longa every where long positione by positione: ut as in the words, ventus the wind, axis an axle-tree, patrizo to do like his father, cuius of whom.*

II. *Quod si but if consonans a consonant claudat endeth priorem dictionem the former word, sequente the following word item also inchoante beginning à consonante with a consonant, vocalis praecedens the vowel going before etiam also longa erit will be long positione by positione: ut as, Major sum I am greater quam than cui one whom fortuna fortune possit is able nocere to hurt. Syllabæ the syllables jor, sum, quam, et and sit, longæ sunt are here long positione by positione.*

III. *At si but if prior dictio the former word exeat endeth in vocalem brevem in a short vowel, sequente the following word incipiente beginning à duabus consonantibus with two consonants, interdum sometimes producitur it is made long, sed but rarius very seldom: ut as, Occulta spolia they brought away the secret spoils et and plures triumphos often triumphed de pace for making peace among themselves.*

IV: *Vocalis brevis a short vowel ante mutam before a mute, sequente liquidâ a liquid following, redditur is rendered communis common; ut as in the words, patris of a father, volucris of a bird: Verò but longa a long vowel non mutatur is not changed, ut as in the words aratrum a plough, simulacrum an image.*

VOCALIS a vowel ante alteram before another vowel in eâdem dictione in the same word est is ubique brevis every

every where short, ut as in the words, Deus God, meus mine, tuus thine, pius pious.

Excipias *you may except* genitivos *the genitive cases in ius ending in ius, habentes having secundam formam the second form or declension pronominis of a pronoun, ut as, unius of one, illius of that, &c. and some others; ubi where (or in which words) i the vowel i reperitur is found communis common, licet although in alterius in the word alterius of another semper sit it be always brevis short: in aliis in the word aliis of another semper longa it is always long.*

Excipiendi sunt etiam *except likewise genitivi the genitive case, et and dativi the dative quintae declinationis of the fifth declension, ubi e where the vowel e inter geminum i between two i's longa fit is made long; ut as in the word faciei of a face: alioqui non otherwise not, ut as in the words, rei of a thing, spei of hope, fidei of faith.*

Etiam *also si the syllable si in fio in the word fio to be made or done est longa is long; nisi unless e et r the letters e and r sequuntur follow simul together: ut as in fierem, fieri to be made or done: Jam now omnia all things fuent are done que which negabam I denied posse were able fieri to be done.*

Dius *heavenly* habet *hath* primam syllabam *the first syllable longa long.* Diana *the goddess Diana* communem *hath the first syllable common.*

Interjectio *ohe the interjection ohe habet hath priorem syllabam the former syllable communem common.*

Vocalis *u vowel* ante alteram *before another* in Græcis dictionibus *in Greek words* subinde *now and then* fit longa *is made long; ut as, Dicite Pierides say O ye muses. Respice Laertern have regard to Laertes.*

Et *and also* in Græcis possessivis *in Greek possessives: ut as, Æneïa nutrix Æneas's nurse, Rhodopeïus Orpheus Orpheus of Rhodope.*

Omnis diphthongus *every diphthong longa est is long apud Latinos with the Latins: ut as, Aurum gold, neuter neither, musæ of a song, or songs, nisi except sequente vocali*

vocali *when a vowel followeth*: ut *as*, *Praeire* *to go before*, *præustus* *burnt at one end*, *præamplus* *very large*.

DERIVATIVA derivatives (or words derived of others)
scđ *commonly* *sortiuntur* *are assigned* *eandem* *quantitatem* *the same quantity* *cum* *primitivis* *with their primitives* *(or the words they are derived from)*: ut *as*, *Amator* *a lover*, *amicus* *a friend*, *amabilis* *amiable*; *prima* *brevi* *the first syllable being short*, *ab amo* *as being derived from the verb amo* *I love*.

Exciuntur tamen except however pauca *a few words* quæ *which deducta being derived à brevibus from short syllables* producunt *make long* *primam syllabam the first syllable*: ut *as*, *como* *comis* *to comb or adorn the hair*, à *coma* *derived from coma the hair*; *fomes* *fuel*, *et* *and* *fomentum* *an assuaging plaster*, à *from foveo* *to cherish*; *humanus* *human, or humane*, *ab homo* *derived from homo a man or woman*; *jucundus* *pleasant*, à *from juvo* *to delight*; *jumentum* *a beast of burthen*, à *from juvo* *to help*; *junior* *younger*, à *from juvenis* *young*; *laterna* *a lantern*, à *from lateo* *to lie hid*; *lex* *legis* *a law*, à *from lego* *to read*; *mobilis* *moveable*, à *from moveo* *to move*; *nonus* *the ninth*, à *from novem* *nine*; *rex* *regis* *a king*, *regina* *a queen*, à *from rego* *to rule*; *sedes* *a seat*, à *from sedeo* *to sit*; *tegula* *a tile*, à *from tego* *to cover*; *tragula* *a javelin, also a drag-net*, à *from traho* *to draw*; *vomer* *a ploughshare*, à *from vomo* *to cast up*; *vox* *vocis* *a voice*, à *from voco* *to call*.

Et and contrà *on the other hand* sunt *there are some words* quæ *which deducta though derived à longis from primitives of a long syllable* corripiunt *make short* *primam the first syllable*; ut *as*, *Arena* *sand*, *arista* *the beard of corn*, *arundo* *a reed*, *ab* *derived from areo* *to be dry*; *aruspex* *a soothsayer*, *ab* *from ara* *an altar*; *dicax* *a jester*, à *from dico* *to speak*; *ditio* *power*, à *from ditis* *rich*; *disertus* *eloquent*, à *from dissero* *to dispute*; *dux* *ducis* *a leader*, à *from duco* *to lead*; *fides* *faith*, à *from fio* *to be made or done*; *fragor* *a noise or crash*, *fragilis* *frail*, à *from frango* *to break*; *genui* *I have begotten*, à *from gigno* *to beget*;

beget; lucerna a candle, à from luceo to shine; nato natas to shoot out, à from natu to be grown or sprung up; noto notas to mark, à from notu to be known; posui I have put, à from pono to put; potui I have been able, à from possum to be able; sopor a sound sleep, à from sopio to lay asleep.

Et and alia nonnulla some other words ex utroque genere of either sort, quæ which relinquuntur are left observanda to be observed studiosis by the studious inter legendum in their reading.

COMPOSITA compound words sequuntur follow quantitatem the quantity simplicium of their simple words; ut as, à from lego legis to read, comes perlego to read through; à from lego legas to send as an ambassador, allego to allege or accuse by messengers; à from potens powerful, impotens weak; à from solor to cheer, consolor to comfort.

Tamen however hæc brevia these words having short syllables, enata though derived à longis from long syllables, excipiuntur are excepted; ut as, Dejero to swear a great oath, pejero to forswear, à from juro to swear; innuba unmarried, pronuba a bride-maid, à from nubo to be married.

OMNE præteritum every preterperfect tense dissylabum of two syllables habet hath priorem the former syllable longam long: ut as, Legi I have read, emi I have bought, movi I have moved.

1. Tamen yet excipias you must except the words, bibi I drank, dedi I gave, scidi I have cut, steti I have stood, stiti I have staid, tuli I have borne or suffered, et and fidi, à from findo to cleave.

2. Geminantia words that double primam the first syllable præteriti of the preterperfect tense habent have primam the first syllable brevem short: ut as, Cecidi, I have fallen, à from cado to fall; cecidi I have beaten, à from cædo to beat; didici I have learned, fefelli I have deceived, momordi I have bitten, pependi I have weighed, pupugi I have pricked, tetendi I have stretched, tetigi I have touched, totondi I have sheared, tutudi I have thumped.

SUPINUM dissyllabum *a supine of two syllables* habet hath priorem *the former syllable longam long* : ut *as*, visum *to see*, latum *to bear or suffer*, lotum *to wash*, motum *to move*.

Excipe except datum *to give*, itum *to go*, litum *to daub*, quitum *to may or can*, ratum *to suppose*, rutum *to rush*, satum *to sow*, situm *to suffer*, stitum *to stop*, et and citum, à *from* cieo cies *to stir up*; nam for citum, à *from* cio cies *to make to go*, quartæ of the fourth conjugation, habet hath priorem *the former syllable longam long*.

I. A FINITA words ending in a producuntur are made long: ut *as*, Ama *love thou*, contra *against*, erga *towards*.

Excipias except, puta suppose, ita even so, quia because, postea afterwards, eja, well! item also omnes casus all cases in a ending in a cujuscunque fuerint generis of whatever gender they are, numeri number, aut or declinationis declension; preter except vocativos the vocative cases à Græcis in as of Greek words ending in as: ut *as*, O Ænea O Æneas, O Thoma, O Thomas; et and ablativum the ablative case primæ declinationis of the first declension: ut *as*, musa by or with a song.

Numeralia nouns of number in ginta ending in ginta habent have finalem the last syllable communem common, sed but frequentius more frequently longam long: ut *as*, triginta thirty.

II. Desinentia words ending in b, d, t, brevia sunt are short: ut *as*, ab from, ad to, caput the head.

III. Desinentia words ending in c, producuntur are made long: ut *as*, ac and, sic so, et and adverbium the adverb hic here.

Sed but duo in c two ending in c, corripiuntur are made short; nec neither, et and donec until.

Tria sunt there are three communia common, fac do thou, pronomen hic the pronoun hic he, et and neutrum ejus its neuter hoc, modò if so be non sit it is not ablativi casus, of the ablative case.

IV. Finita e words ending in e brevia sunt are short: ut *as*, Mare the sea, penè almost, lege read thou, scribe write thou.

Omnès voces *all words* quintæ inflexionis of the *fifth declension* in *e ending in e* excipiendæ sunt *are to be excepted*: ut *as*, *Fide* the *ablative case of fides* *faith*, *et and die in the day*, *unà cum particulis together with the particles* *inde enatis that are derived of it*: ut *as*, *Hodie to-day*, *quotidie daily*, *pridie the day before*, *postridie the day after*: *item also quare wherefore*, *quadere for what cause*, *eare therefore*, *et and si qua sunt similia if there be any thing of the like sort*.

Et item *and also* secundæ personæ singulares *the second persons singular secundæ conjugationis of the second conjugation*: ut *as*, *Doce teach, move move*.

Etiam also monosyllaba monosyllables in *e ending in e* producuntur *are made long*: ut *as*, *me me, te thee, se himself or themselves*; *præter except conjunctiones encliticæ the enclitical conjunctions, que and, ne whether, ve or*.

Quin *et and moreover* adverbia adverbs in *e ending in e*, deducta derived ab *adjectivis from adjectives* secundæ declinationis of the *second declension*, habent *have e the letter e longum long*: ut *as*, *Pulchrè beautifully, doctè learnedly, valdè pro for validè, mightily*.

Quibus *to which the adverbs* *fermè et and ferè almost accedunt are added*; *tamen yet bene well, et and malè ill, omnino corripiuntur are always made short*.

Postremò *lastly* quæ such words as scribuntur *are written à Græcis per η with the Greek letter η or long e*, producuntur *are long naturā by nature*, *cujuscunque fuerint casūs of whatever case they are*, *generis gender, aut or numeri number*: ut *as*, *Lethe the river so called, Anchise a proper name, cete whales, Tempe the name of a pleasant valley in Thessaly*.

V. Finita i words ending in i longa sunt *are long*: ut *as, Domini Lords, magistri masters, amari to be loved*.

Præter *except mihi to me, tibi to thee, sibi to himself or themselves, ubi where, ibi there, quæ which words sunt are communia common*.

Verò *but nisi except et and quasi as if corripiuntur are made short*.

Cujus etiam sortis of which sort likewise sunt are dative the dative et and vocativi the vocative cases Græcorum of Greek words, quorum genitivus singularis the genitive case singular of which words exit endeth in os breve in os a short termination: ut as, dative the dative cases Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi; vocativi the vocative cases Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni, all proper names.

VI. Finita l words ending in l corripiuntur are made short: ut as, Animal an animal, Annibal a proper name, mel honey, pugil a champion, consul a consul.

Præter except the words nil, contractum contracted à of nihil nothing, sal salt, et and sol the sun.

Et and Hebræa quædam certain Hebrew words in el ending in el: ut as Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, the names of unghels, Daniel the name of a prophet.

VII. Finita n words ending in n producuntur are made long: ut as, Paean a name of Apollo, Hymen the god of marriage, quin but, Xenophon a proper name, non not, dæmon the devil.

Excipe except forsitan perhaps, an whether, tamen yet, attamen but yet, veruntamen nevertheless, et and in the preposition in.

Et his and to these accedunt are added illæ voces those words quæ which patiuntur suffer Apocopen the figure Apocope: ut as, men' what me? viden' do you see? audin' do you hear? etiam also exin from henceforth, subin now and then, dein afterwards, proin therefore.

In an quoque words also ending in an à nominativis from nominative cases in a ending in a: ut as, nominativo in the nominative case Iphigenia, Ægina, accusativo in the accusative case Iphigenian, Æginan, proper names of women: Nam for in an words ending in an à nominativis from nominative cases in as ending in as producuntur are made long: ut as, nominativo in the nominative case Æneas, Marsyas; accusativo in the accusative case Ænean, Marsyan, proper names.

Item also nomina nouns in en ending in en, quorum genitivus whose genitive case habet hath inis correptum made short; ut as, Carmen a poem, crimen a fault, pecten

pecten *a comb*, tibicen *a player on the flute*, make inis
in the genitive case.

Quædam etiam *some nouns also*, in in per i ending in
in with an i, ut as, Alexin; et and in yn per y ending
in yn with a y: ut as, Ityn, *both proper names*.

Græca etiam *Greek words also* in on ending in on per o
parvum with little o, cujuscunque fuerint casūs of what-
ever case they be; ut as, Nominativo in the nominative
case Ilion the city Troy, Pelion a hill in Thessaly; ac-
cusativo in the accusative case, Caucason the name of a
mountain, Pylon the name of a town.

VIII. O finita words ending in o communia sunt are
common: ut as, Dico I say, virgo a virgin, porrò more-
over. Sic so docendo in teaching, legendo in reading,
et alia gerundia and other gerunds in do ending in do.

Sed but obliqui casus oblique cases in o ending in o
semper always producuntur are made long; ut as, da-
tivo in the dative case, domino to a lord or master, ser-
vo to a servant; ablativo in the ablative case, templo
from the temple, damno with loss.

Et and adverbia adverbs derivata derived ab adjективis
from adjectives: ut as, tantò by so much, quantò by how
much, liquidd clearly, falsò falsely, primò first, mani-
festò manifestly, &c. and so forth, præter except sedulò
diligently, mutuò mutually, crebrò frequently, quæ
which words sunt are communia common.

Cæterùm but modò now or only, et and quomodo how,
semper always corripiuntur are made short.

Quoque likewise, citò soon, ut et as also ambo both,
duo two, ego I, atque and homo a man or woman, vix
leguntur producta are scarcely ever read long.

Tamen however monosyllaba monosyllables in o end-
ing in o producuntur are made long: ut as, Do I give,
sto I stand.

Item also Græca Greek words per w with great o, cu-
jusmodi fuerint casūs of whatever case they are; ut as,
nominativo in the nominative case, Sappho, Dido; ge-
nitivo in the genitive case, Androgeo, Apollo; accusa-
tivo in the accusative case, Atho, Apollo, all proper
names

names. Sic et and so likewise ergo (when put) pro causa for the sake of.

IX. Finita *r* words ending in *r* corripiuntur *are made short*: ut *as*, Cæsar *a proper name*, *per by*, *vir a man*, *uxor a wife*, *turtur a turtle*.

Etiam *these words also producuntur are made long*: *far bread corn*, *Lar an household god*, *Nar the river so called*, *ver the spring*, *fur a thief*, *cur why*: quoque *also par equal to or like cum compositis with its compounds*: ut *as*, *Compar a companion*, *impar unequal*, *dispar unlike*.

Græca etiam *also Greek words in er ending in er quæ which illis among them desinunt end in η in the long e before r*: ut *as*, *Aër the air*, *crater a cup*, *character a mark or sign*, *æther the sky*, *soter a deliverer*: præter except *pater a father*, *et and mater a mother*, *quæ which apud Latinos with Lutin authors habent have ultimam the last syllable brevem short*.

X. Finita *s* words ending in *s* habent *have pares terminaciones the like terminations cum numero with the number vocalium of the vowels*; nempe *namely*, *as, es, is, os, us*.

1. AS finita words ending in *as* producuntur *are made long*: ut *as, amas thou lovest, musas the muses, majestas majesty, bonitas goodness*.

Præter except Græca some Greek words, quorum genitivus singularis *whose genitive case singular exit in dos endeth in dos*; ut *as, Arcas, Pallas, proper names, genitivo in the genitive case, Arcados, Pallados*.

Et also præter except accusativos plurales *the accusative cases plural nominum crescentium of nouns increasing*: ut *as, Heros heroos a hero, Phyllis Phyllidos a proper name, accusativo plurali in the accusative plural, heroas, Phyllidas*.

2. Finita *es* words ending in *es* longa sunt *are long*: ut *as, Anchises the father of Aeneas, sedes thou sittest, doces thou teachest, patres fathers*.

Nomina in es nouns ending in es tertiae inflexionis of the

the third declension, quæ which nouns corripiunt make short penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing, excipiuntur are excepted; ut as, miles a soldier, seges standing corn, dives rich; sed butaries a ram, abies a fir-tree, paries the wall of a house, Ceres the goddess of corn; et and pes a foot, una cum compositis together with its compounds; ut as, bipes having two feet, tripes having three, longa sunt are long.

Quoque also es thou art, à from sum I am, unà cum compositis together with its compounds, corripitur is made short: ut as, potes thou art able, ades thou art present, prodes thou profitest, obes thou hinderest; quibus to which penès in the power of potest may adjungi be added.

Item also neutra words of the neuter gender, et and nominativi plurales the nominative cases plural Græcorum of certain Greek words: ut as, hippomanes a raging humour in mares, cacoëthes an ill habit, Cyclopes giants so called, Naïdes fairies haunting rivers and fountains.

3. Finita is words ending in is brevia sunt are short: ut as, Paris a proper name, panis bread, tristis sorrowful, hilaris merry.

Excipe except obliquos casus plurales the oblique cases plural in is ending in is, qui which producuntur are made long; ut as, musis the dative and ablative case plural à of musa a muse or song, mensis, à of mensa, a table, dominis lords, templis temples, et and quis pro for quibus whom.

Item also producentia such words as make long penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing: ut as, Samnis a Samnite, Salamis an isle by Athens, genitivo in the genitive case, Samnitis, Salaminis.

Adde hoc add to this place quæ such words as desinunt in is end in is, contracta being contracted ex eis from the diphthong eis, sive Græca whether they be Greek sive or Latina Latin, cujuscunque numeri of whatever number aut or casus case fuerint they may be; ut as, Simois a river in Troy, Pyrois one of the horses of the sun, partis parts, omnis all; e from the words Simoeis, Pyroeis, parteis, omneis, being taken away.

Et item *and also* omnia monosyllaba *all monosyllables*: ut *as*, *vis strength*, *lis strife*; *preter except* *is he*, *et and quis who*, *nominativos in the nominative case*, *et and bis twice*.

Istis to these accedunt *are added* secundæ personæ singulares *the second person singular* verborum of verbs in *is ending in is*, quorum secundæ personæ plurales *whose second persons plural* desinunt in *itis end in itis*, penultimâ *the last syllable save one* productâ *being made long*: *una cum futuris together with the future tenses* optativi *of the optative (or the potential) mood* in *ris ending in ris*: ut *as*, *audis thou hearest*, *velis thou mayest be willing*, *dederis thou shalt give*, *pluraliter in the plural member* *auditibus*, *velitis*, *dederitis*.

4. Os finita words *ending in os* producuntur *are made long*: ut *as*, *honos honour*, *nepos a nephew*, *dominos lords*, *servos servants*.

Præter except *compos he that hath ability or power in something*, *impos that is unable, or not having power*, *et and os ossis a bone*.

Et and Græca Greek words per *o* parvum with little *o*: ut *as*, *Delos an isle in the Aegean sea*, *chaos a confused heap of all things*; *Pallados the genitive case of Pallas Minerva*, *Phyllidos the genitive case of Phyllis a proper name*.

5. Us finita words *ending in us* corripiuntur *are made short*: ut *as*, *famulus a man-servant*, *regius royal*, *tempus time*, *amamus we love*.

Producentia words that make long penultimam *the last syllable but one* genitivi crescentis *of the genitive case increasing* excipiuntur *are excepted*; ut *as*, *salus health*, *tellus the earth*, *genitivo in the genitive case* *salutis, telluris*.

Etiam also omnes voces *all words* quartæ inflexionis *of the fourth declension* in *us ending in us* sunt longæ *are long*, *præter except* nominativum *the nominative* *et and vocativum the vocative case* singulares *in the singular number*; ut *as*, *genitivo singulari in the genitive case singular*, *mandus of a hand*, *nominativo, accusativo, vocativo*

tivo plurali in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases plural manus hands.

Etiam also monosyllaba monosyllables accedunt are added his to these: ut as, crus the leg from the knee to the ankle, thus frankincense, mus a mouse, sus a sow.

Et item and also Græca Greek words per oꝫs diphthongum ending with the diphthong ous, cujuscunque fuerint castis of whatever case they be: ut as, nominativo in the nominative case, Panthus, Melampus, proper names; genitivo in the genitive case, Sapphūs, Cliūs, proper names: atque and nomen the name Jesus Jesus venerandum to be reverenced piis cunctis by all godly people.

XI. Postremò lastly, u finita omnia all words ending in u producuntur are made long: ut as, manus the ablative case of manus u hand, genu a knee, amatu to be loved, diu a long time.

SUPPLEMENT.

OF GRAMMATICAL FIGURES. "

I. IN ETYMOLOGY.

1. *APOCOPE* takes away from the end of words, to which *Paragoge* adds: as *ingeni*, *men*', *satin*'; *dicier*; for *ingenii*, *mēne*, *satisne*; *dici*.

2. *Syncope* takes away from the middle of words; as *aspris*, *cælicolūm*, *currūm*, *deūm*, *dixti*, *surréxe*; for *asperis*, *cælicolarum*, *curruum*, *deorum*, *dixisti*, *surrexisse*.

3. *Epenthesis* inserts in the middle of words: as *induperator*, *alitum*, *cælitum*, *relligio*, *repperit*: for *imperator*, *alitum*, *cælitum*, *religio*, *reperit*.

4. *Prosthesis* adds to the beginning of a word, from which *Aphæresis* takes away: as *gnatus*, *tetuli*; —'st, *ruit*, *conia*; for *natus*, *tuli*; *est*, *eruit*, *ciconia*.

5. *Antithesis* alters a letter; *Metathesis* displaces or transposes it: as *olli*, *faciundum*, *optumus*, *Lybia*; for *illi*, *faciendum*, *optimus*, *Libya*.

6. *Archaismus* is the old way of writing: as *aulai*, *anuas*

anuis, curru, diē, omneis or omnis, ornati, senati, vīds;
 for *aulæ, anūs, currui, diei, omnes, ornatūs, senatūs,*
vīcē. In some old authors, *neuter, nullus, solus, totus,*
 have the form of *bonus* in the genitive and dative.

7. *Hellenismus* is an imitation of the Greek form: as *Helene, heroas, Pallados*; for *Helena, heroes, Palladis.*

II. IN SYNTAX.

There are four general forms in Syntax: *Ellipsis, Pleonasmus, Enallage, Hyperbaton.*

ELLIPSIS.

Ellipsis, properly so called, is the omission of some word, necessary to complete the sense: as *Ita aiunt, Ter. Sed reddere posse negabat, Vir. Egomet continuo mecum, Ter. Paucis te volo, Id. Saturno rege, Ov.* Here are understood, *homines, se, cogitabam, verbis alloqui, existente.*

To the *ELLIPSIS* belong the following figures:

Apposition is when two nouns are put in the same case: as *Urbs Roma, i. e. existens, vel quæ est Roma.*

Asyndeton omits the conjunctions: as *Ferte citi flamas, date tela, impellite remos, Vir.*

Syllepsis is when one adjective, or verb, agrees with two or more substantives of different genders, or numbers, in that which is most worthy: as *Pater mihi et mater, mortui sunt, Ter.* Sometimes the preposition *cum*, with an ablative, serves as a nominative: as *Dux hostium cum urbe Valentia et exercitu (i. e. dux, et urbs Valentia et exercitus) deleti, Sal. Divellimur inde Iphitus et Pelias mecum, i. e. et ego, Vir.*

Zeugma is when the adjective, or verb, agrees with the nearer substantive, without regard to the worthier gender, or person: as *Et genus et virtus, nisi cum re, vilius algæ est, Hor.*

Prolepsis is when the parts are mentioned after the whole, though differing from it in number or person, without repeating the verb or adjective: as *Exercitus hostium duo, alter ab urbe, alter à Gallia, obstant, Sal. Ego vapulando, ille verberando, usque ambo defessi sumus, Ter. for,*

for, *Exercitus hostium duo obstant, alter ab urbe obstat, alter à Gallis obstat. Usque ambo defessi sumus, ego defessus sum vapulando, ille defessus est verberando.*

The grammatical Synecdoche is, when that which belongs to a part is ascribed to the whole, *xerà, or secundum*, being understood: as *Vultum caligine tectus, Ov.*

PLEONASMUS.

A *Pleonasmus*, properly so called, is a redundancy of one or more words in a sentence: as *Sic ore locuta est, Vir. Fac me ut sciam, Ter. Postquam primus amor deceptam morte fefellit, Vir. Magis beator, Vir. Nisi si, Ov.*

To the *PLEONASMUS* belong the following figures:

Parelcon adds an unnecessary particle to a word: as *adesdum, egomet, hicce, quisnam, tute, videsis.*

Polysyndeton uses superfluous conjunctions copulative: as *Unda Eurusque Notusque ruunt, creberque procellis Africus, Vir.*

Hendyadis expresses one thing, as if it were two: as *Pateris libamus et auro, Vir. i. e. pateris aureis.*

Periphrasis uses many words to express one thing: as *Teneri fætus ovium, Vir. i. e. agni.*

ENALLAGE.

Enallage, properly so called, changes the genders, numbers, persons, moods, and tenses: as, *Ego quoque unù pereo, quod mihi est charius, i. e. qui mihi sum charior, Ter. Romanus vicit erat, i. e. Romani vicitores erant, Liv. Fidelem haud fermè mulieri invenias virum, i.e. quis inveniat, Ter. Quid non mortalia pectora cogis, auri sacra fames, i. e. cogit auri fames, Vir. Ubi socordiae te tradideris, nequicquam deos implores, i. e. implorabis, Sal. Si hic sis, aliter sentias, i. e. esses, sentires, Ter.*

To *ENALLAGE* belong the following figures:

Antimeria, puts one part of speech for another: as *Siquid in Flacco (i. e. me) est, Hor. Suos, i. e. propitios habuere deos, Ov. Nostrum illud vivere triste, i. e. vita, Pers. Invitus feci, i. e. invitè, Ter. Sic vita erat, i. e. tassis, Id. O mihi sola mei super Astyanactis imago, i. e. superstes, Vir.*

Synthesis is when a verb, or adjective, agrees not in construction, but sense: as *turba*, i. e. *multi homines*, *ruunt*, Ov. *Subeunt Tegeaea juventus auxilio tardi*, i. e. *juvenes*, Stat.

Anacolouthon is when the following and preceding clauses do not agree: as *Nam nos omnes, quibus est als cunde aliquis objectus labos, omne quod est interea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est*, Ter. But this figure is by no means to be imitated.

Hellenismus imitates the Greek form: as *Sensit medios delapsus Achivos*, i. e. *se delapsum fuisse*, Vir. *Abstine irarum*, i. e. *ab iris*, Hor.

Archaismus is the old way of writing: *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Nocere hominem*, Plaut.

HYPERBATON.

Hyperbaton, properly so called, is too long a parenthesis, or when the verb stands at too great a distance from the nominative case: as,

*Interea reges (ingenti mole Latinus
Quadrijugo vehitur currū, cui tempora circum
Aurati bis sex radii fulgentia cingunt,
Solis avi specimen; bigis it Turnus in albīs,
Bina manu lato crispans hastilia ferro;
Hinc pater Æneas, Romanæ stirpis origo,
Sidereo flagrans clypeo et cælestibus armis,
Et juxtū Ascanius, magnæ spes altera Romæ,
Procedunt castris.* Vir. *Æn.*

To the HYPERBATON belong the following figures:

Anastrophe puts a word after, which ought to go before: as *Quæ omnia fecit lucri*, i. e. *lucrificit*, Nep. *Faciam tamen satis tibi*, i. e. *satisfaciam*, Cic. *I præ, sequar*, i. e. *præi*, Ter.

Hysteron proteron puts that first which is last in sense: as *Valet atque vivit*, Ter. *Moriumur, et in media arma ruamus*, Vir.

Hypallage is a mutual change of cases: as *Dare clas-sibus Austrōs*, i. e. *classes Austris*, Vir. *In nova fert animus mutatas discere formas corpora*, i. e. *corpora mutata in novas formas*, Ov. *Synchysis*

Synchysis is a confused placing of words: as *Nemque pīlā dīppīs inimicū et lūdere crādis*, Hor. *Vos et Scyl-læam rabiem, penitusque sonantes accēstis scopulas*, Vir.

Tmesis divides a compound word, and puts some other between the parts: as *Per mihi gratiū feceris*, i. e. *per gratum*, Cic. *Septem subjecta trioni gens*, i. e. *sep-tentriōni*, Vir.

Parenthesis interrupts a sentence by inserting some clause in the middle of it: as *Tityre, dūm redēo (brevis est via), pasce capellus*, Vir.

III. IN PROSODY.

Synalæpha cuts off a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word, the next word beginning with a vowel or diphthong: as

Sérā ni | mis vīt' | ést||crāstīnā | vīv' hōdī | ē. Mart.
Ah, heu, hei, io, O, proh, vœ, are never cut off.

Note also, long vowels and diphthongs are sometimes made common before another vowel or diphthong, after the manner of the Greek: as

*Insulē Tōniē. — Căstăneē hărsităē. — Rhōdopēită
ārcēs. Vir.*

Ecthipsis cuts off *m* and its preceding vowel, the next word beginning with a vowel: as
Mōnstr' hōr|rend' in|fōrm' in|gēns cuā|lūniēu ā|dēmptūm.
for *monstrum, horrendum, informe*, Vir.

The old Roman writers cut off *s* in the same manner, but are not to be imitated therein.

Note, the *Synalæpha* and *Ecthipsis* are sometimes used at the end of a verse, the next verse beginning with a vowel, as

—*ignari hominumque locorumque*
Erramus.

—*turres ac tecta Latinorum*

Ardua cernebant. Virg.

Systole shortens a long syllable: as *Orion, palūs, tulērunt*, for *Ōrión, palūs, tulērunt*.

Diastole lengthens a short syllable: as *nausfrāgia, Priamides*; for *nausfrāgia, Frāmides*.

Synæresis contracts two syllables into one: as *dī*, *deinde*, *ēdem*, *idem*, and many others; for *dīi*, *deinde*, *ēdem*, *idem*.

Diacresis dissolves a syllable into two: as *aulāi*, *evolūsse*, *Orphēus*, *sylvē*; for *aulē*, *evoluisse*, *Orpheus*, *sylvē*.

Cæsura is when the last syllable of a word begins a new foot; and commonly takes place after the first, second, third, or fourth feet; as

Pectori|bus inhi|ans spi|rantia | consulit | exta, Vir.

Sometimes a short syllable is made long by *Cæsura*: as *bus* in *pectoribus* of the above verse.

EXPLANATION OF THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

1. The Romans dated by Calends, Nones, and Ides.
2. The Calends are the 1st day of every month.
3. The Nones are the 7th of four months, i. e. March, May, July, October, and the 5th of all the rest.
4. The Ides are always eight days after the Nones; and therefore fall on the 15th of those four months, and on the 13th of the rest.
5. The Romans reckoned backwards; and therefore all the days from the Ides of any month are said to be so many days before the Calends of the next; as, for instance, the 20th of January is the 13^o Cal. Feb. i. e. thirteen days before the Calends of February.

To turn ROMAN TIME into ENGLISH TIME.

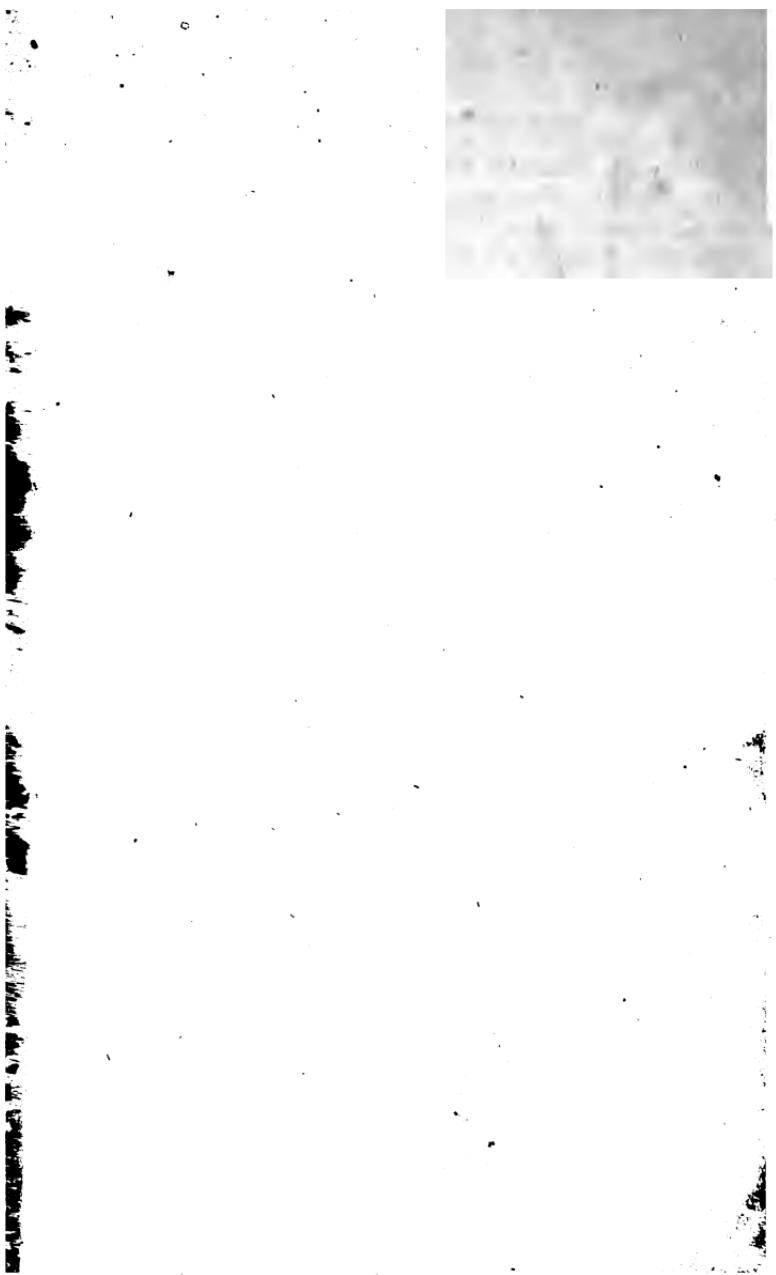
Subtract the Roman numeral from ours, adding 1 in Nones and Ides, and 2 in Calends; and the difference is our date: as 13^o Cal. Feb. is thus known: 13 taken from 31 (the number of days in January) leaves 18, add 2 = 20, i. e. the 20th day of January. Again, 4^o Id. Jan. thus: 4 from 13 (the day on which the Ides of this month fall) leaves 9, add 1 = 10, i. e. the 10th of January. Again, 4^o Non. Jan. thus: 4 from 5 (the day on which the Nones fall) leaves 1, add 1 = 2, i. e. the 2d day of January.

Note, the 2 is added in the account of Calends, because the 1st day of the following month and the current day are included.

Note also, that in leap year, the 24th and 25th of February were called 6^o Cal. Martii; and therefore that year was called bissextile.

Note lastly, that English time is turned into Roman time in the same manner, *mutatis mutandis*.







8

11/2

37

C. H.

11/2

